ET5 Touring User Manual

User Manual

Disclaimer for ET5 Touring

Thank you for choosing NIO ET5 Touring model (hereinafter referred to as “ET5 Touring”). ET5 Touring is a smart electric vehicle. We will provide you with considerate and thoughtful user services during your green journey with ET5 Touring.

Before embarking on a journey with ET5 Touring, it is recommended that you read the “User Manual” on the center display to learn all the information required for the use of the vehicle.

- Without legal and valid authorization, no one may make copies of or modify the contents of this manual in whole or in part.
- Without legal and valid authorization, no one may refit, adjust, or disassemble vehicle parts, so as to prevent the occurrence of feature failures or personal injury.
- The labels, signs and pictures used in, as well as the contents of this Manual are for illustration only.

The actual equipment, configuration, features etc. of your vehicle may be different from the description and illustration in this Manual. They may be upgraded with the change of the vehicle software version. Please refer to the actual equipment, configuration, features etc. of your vehicle. For the avoidance of doubt, NIO has the right to decide whether and when to upgrade your vehicle's equipment, configuration, features and related software for safety, compliance with laws and regulations and other considerations.

Please strictly abide by the warning information referred to in this Manual. It will help you use the vehicle more safely. Pay attention to any other warning information released to you by NIO. Please make sure that you read the latest version of this Manual carefully and familiarize yourself with the features of ET5 Touring before using. **If ET5 Touring is not operated correctly, it may cause injury to you or others or lead to vehicle damage or property loss. NIO shall undertake no responsibility in such an event.**

- Warning: This content is closely related to personal safety. Please always comply with it! Failure to comply may result in personal injury or a serious accident.
- Caution: This is to advise you on how to avoid possible vehicle damage or property loss.
- Note: It provides you with suggestions on how to make better use of your vehicle.

If you have any questions about this Manual or need emergency assistance, please call the NIO Hotline, or contact NIO via E-mail.

	NIO Hotline	E-mail Address
Denmark	00 8000 999 6699	contact.dk@nio.io
Sweden	00 8000 999 6699	contact.se@nio.io
Netherlands	00 8000 999 6699	contact.nl@nio.io
Germany	00 8000 999 6699	contact.de@nio.io
Norway	00 47 800 24 789	contact.no@nio.io

Lock

Find My Car
Unlocking/Locking with Smart Key
Replacing the Smart Key Fob Battery
Keyless Unlocking and Locking
Unlocking Start and Locking with NIO App
Unlocking/Locking via Bluetooth
NFC Unlocking and Locking
Unlocking and Locking on the Center Console
Emergency Unlocking and Locking
Walk Up Unlock
Auto Unlock When In PARK
Walk Away Lock
Drive-Away Locking
Anti-theft Alarm System

Doors and Windows

Door Handle
Easy Entry
Liftgate
Window Control
Sunshade
Stone Guard Film

Charging

Charging Instructions
Charging Operations
Battery Level and Charging Display
Battery Preconditioning
Smart Charging

Lights

High and Low Beams
Turn Lights
Fog Lights
Position Lights
Welcome Lighting
Outer Door Handle Courtesy Lights
Interior Reading Lights
Puddle Lights
Smart Ambient Lighting
Vanity Mirror Lighting
Follow Me Home
Minimal Lights
Full Brightness
Soft Glow
Rear trunk Lighting

Account and Memory

Linking Key Fob to Account
Switching Accounts
Authorized Unlocking
Guest Mode
Service Authorization
Driver Seat Position Memory Adjustment
Front Passenger Seat Position Memory Adjustment
Steering Wheel Position Memory Adjustment
Side Mirrors Position Memory Adjustment

Seats

Driver Seat Adjustment
Front Passenger Seat Adjustment
Seat Headrest Adjustment
Rear Seat Adjustment
Massage
Heat
Ventilate
Relax

Storage

Front Storage
Rear Storage
Safety Storage Box
Rear Trunk
Hitched Trailer

Steering Wheel

Start Adjustment
Control via Right Steering Wheel Buttons
Control via Left Steering Wheel Buttons
Steering Wheel Heating
Double-button Restart of Steering Wheel

In-Car Power Supply

USB Port
12V Power Supply

Wipers and Rearview Mirrors

Side Mirrors Position Adjustment
Fold Side Mirrors
Side Mirrors Heating
Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors Auto-Dimming

Air Conditioning

Vehicle Climate Control
Air Purification

Personalized Entertainment

Music
Navigation
Photos
Phone
Connect to Mobile Device
Wireless Charging
NOMI Smart Assistant
Comfort Features
Intelligent Fragrance System
Tide
Quick Access

Instrument and Central Control System

Instrument Cluster Indicators
Controls on Center Display
Event Data Recorder (EDR)
System Update
Resetting All Settings

Driving Experience

Basic Operation
Drive Mode
Scenario Assist
Feature Settings
Digital Video Recorder (DVR)
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

Parking Camera and Parking Assist

Vehicle Safety

Seat Belts
Airbag
Child Locks
Child Safety Seat
Multi Collision Braking (MCB)
Pet Mode
Power-Keep Mode
Camping Mode
Child Presence Detection (CPD)
Alcohol Interlock

Safety Assist Features

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)
Automatic Emergency Brake (AEB)
Lane Departure Warning (LDW)
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)
Emergency Active Stop (EAS)
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)
Advanced Driver Monitoring System (ADMS)
Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert
Door Open Warning (DOW)
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)
Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B)

Driver Assistance

Active Lane Change (ALC)
Lane Centering Control (LCC)
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
Auto High Beams (AHB)
Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion
Power Swap with Assisted Parking (PSAP)
Side Distance Indication System (SDIS)

Vehicle Maintenance

Vehicle Health Status
Maintenance Instructions
Routine Maintenance
Front Wiper Blade Replacement
Rear Wiper Blade Replacement
Windshield Washer Fluid Refill
Coolant Refill
Brake Fluid Refill
Tire Inspection and Maintenance
Brake Pad and Disc Inspection and Maintenance
Air Filter Inspection and Maintenance
12V Battery Care
High-voltage Battery Maintenance and Recycling
Fuse Box under the Hood
Instrument Panel Fuse Box
Rear Trunk Fuse Box
Pre-fuse Box
Exterior Cleaning and Maintenance
Interior Cleaning and Maintenance
Protective Films
Application of Antibacterial Product

General Vehicle Information

Vehicle Information
Instrumentation and Controls
Warning Sign Information
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
Drive motor identification mark
Recommended Fluids and Capacities
E-Powertrain System Information

Specifications and Parameters

Vehicle Dimension
Mass Parameters
Wheel and Tire Specifications
Motor Parameters
Brake and Suspension Specs
High Voltage Battery Parameters

Tire Information

Tire Inflation
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (dTPMS)
Anti-skid Chain
AutoSock
Winter Tires
Tire Repair
Tire Replacement

Owner Emergency Information

Set Up Warning Signs
Call for Road Assistance
Jump Start
Emergency Unlocking from the Outside
Open the Door from the Inside in an Emergency
Emergency Opening of Liftgate
Emergency evacuation
First Aid Kit

Rescue Service

Protective Equipment for Rescue Operations
Cut off the High-voltage Circuit
Towing a Vehicle that Had an Accident
Rescuing the Vehicle in Water
Rescuing the Vehicle on Fire
Rescuing the Vehicle with Battery Leakage
Vehicle Cutting Area

Find My Car

Finding the vehicle when it is far away

You, or the authorized user, can check the parking location information of the vehicle in the mobile APP to experience the convenience of finding the vehicle. When the vehicle is connected to the network, you can check the current location where the vehicle is parked at the top of the “My Vehicle” interface in the mobile APP. Tap this location information to view the current location of the vehicle on the map interface.

Finding the vehicle when it is nearby

When the vehicle is not in driving state and the valid key is within 70 meters of the vehicle (varies depending on the status of the smart key and the surrounding environment of the vehicle), press the lock button on the smart key twice within a span of 3 seconds, and the vehicle horn will emit a sound and the turn lights will flash to alert you of the precise location of the vehicle. Pressing this button again after 5 seconds will cancel the Find My Car prompting, otherwise the Find My Car function will be automatically turned off after 10 seconds.

When the Bluetooth key feature of the mobile phone is turned on or the vehicle is connected to the network, you can also tap the “Find My Car” button on the “My Vehicle” interface in the mobile APP to search for the vehicle, which will trigger the vehicle’s horn to emit a sound and the turn light to flash. Press this button again to cancel the Find My Car prompting.

Unlocking/Locking with Smart Key

Before entering the vehicle, you can use the smart key to unlock the vehicle. Depending on the state of the smart key and the surrounding environment of the vehicle, the furthest effective range of the smart key is 30-70 meters outside the vehicle.

The buttons and features of the smart key are as follows:

1. Vehicle Unlock Button
    - When the vehicle is in P gear, press this button to unlock the vehicle. After unlocking, the turn lights on both sides of the vehicle will flash three times to indicate successful unlocking. After successful unlocking, the outer door handles will automatically pop up.
    - After unlocking the four doors with the smart key, the liftgate can be opened from the outside without a key.
    - Press+hold the unlock button to open all the windows at the same time; release the unlock button during the movement of the windows and the windows will stay at the current position.
    - You can set the unlocking method of the smart key through the center display: enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Doors > Vehicle Unlock Mode**.
        - If you select "Unlock the Whole Vehicle", you only need to press the key‘s unlock button once to unlock all the doors at the same time;
        - If you select "Unlock the Driver's Door", you can press the key’s unlock button once to open only the driver's door and once again to open the other three doors is possible.
2. Vehicle Lock Button
    - When the vehicle is in P gear and all doors (including the hood and liftgate) are closed, press this button to lock the whole vehicle. After the whole vehicle is locked, the turn lights on both sides will flash once and the horn will sound once to indicate the successful locking. At the same time, the outer door handles are retracted, and the side mirrors are automatically folded (enter the Settings interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Side Mirrors > Auto-Fold When Vehicle is Locked** to set the automatic folding of side mirrors).
    - The locked liftgate can only be opened from the outside with the smart key.
    - You can set the on/off of the horn prompt sound through the center display by entering the Settings interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tapping **Sound > RINGER and ALERTS > Lock Confirmation Sound**.
    - Press+hold the lock button to close all the windows at the same time; release the lock button during the window movement and the windows will stay in the current position.
    - When the vehicle is not in driving state and the valid smart key is within 70 meters from the vehicle, you can press it twice within 3 seconds to start the Find My Car feature, and the turn lights and horn will give prompts. Pressing this button once more within 5 seconds, Find My Car will not remind you again; otherwise, it will turn off on its own after 10 seconds.
    - When all the doors are closed, you can press the lock button of the smart key outside the car. At this time, the car is locked. The turn lights will flash once and the horn will sound once to indicate that the locking is successful. If any door is not closed, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the lock button at this time, and you will receive a reminder message from the NIO App, reminding you that the vehicle has not been successfully locked.
3. Liftgate Open Button

When the liftgate is closed, press+hold this button to open the liftgate; when the liftgate is open, press+hold this button again to close the liftgate.

Warning

When leaving a person or a pet in the vehicle, you must ensure that you have your smart key fob with you. Failure to do so may result in injury or death.

Caution

- The smart key is an electronic component. Please avoid hitting, disassembling, or placing it in a place with high temperatures, humidity, and strong vibrations.
- If there are still passengers inside your vehicle when you lock it, you can perform the smart key lock operation, and the passengers inside your vehicle can still open the door from inside, but the Anti-Theft Alarm System will be triggered.
- If there is still a smart key or a mobile phone with Unlocking/Locking via Bluetooth function in your vehicle after your vehicle is locked, the smart key lock operation can still be performed for your vehicle, and the mobile App will prompt you that there is a key in your vehicle.
- If a passenger takes a smart key or a mobile phone with Unlocking/Locking via Bluetooth feature more than 3 meters away from your vehicle, your vehicle will prompt you that a key has left your vehicle.
- If neither any door nor the liftgate is opened within 30 seconds after your vehicle is unlocked, all doors and the liftgate will be automatically relocked.
- If a key is lost or damaged, please contact the NIO Service Center immediately, and carry all the current keys for key binding operations and apply for a new key.

Caution

When the key fob battery is low, use the emergency key to lock the driver's door. All other doors will be locked at the same time.

Note

After closing the driver's door and locking the vehicle, if you accidentally leave the smart key fob in the vehicle when closing another door, the anti-lockout feature will activate automatically. In this case, the vehicle will unlock automatically, the turn signals will flash three times, and the horn will honk three times.

To facilitate the operation of locking the vehicle when the vehicle is in the parked state, you can enter the Settings interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Windows > Auto Close When Locking**, so that when you use the external locking method (such as smart key, NFC, NIO App, Keyless Locking and Walk Away Lock) to lock the vehicle, it can automatically close all the windows of the vehicle, and has an anti-pinch feature during the closing process. The window closing operation will halt if the smart key or the Unlocking and Locking with NIO App button is pressed in the middle of it.

Caution

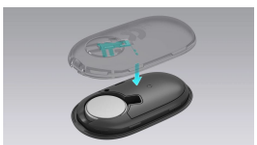
- When turning on Auto Window Close, please ensure the vehicle is locked.
- For occupants' safety, when a front seat is occupied, if the vehicle is locked, the windows will not close. Please do not leave occupants or pets in the locked vehicle.
- If the vehicle is locked while a window is rising, the window will stop rising. In this case, unlock the vehicle first, then lock the vehicle again, and the windows will close automatically.

Replacing the Smart Key Fob Battery

The smart key fob uses a CR2477 coin cell battery. To replace the battery, please pinch the sides of the key fob firmly between fingers, and slide your fingernail or a thin plastic sheet from the bottom gap along the side slit of the key fob until the rear cover can be opened.

Dispose of used batteries according to instructions and local laws. Please see the NIO website for details.

Install the coin cell battery with the positive terminal facing down. After installing, align the battery's contacts, and then close the rear cover properly to ensure proper use of the key fob.



Caution

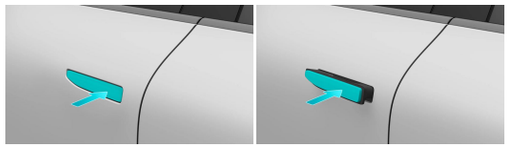
When the key fob battery is low, its remote unlock feature may be affected. In this case, you can try to unlock the vehicle from a shorter distance. If it still doesn't work, please use other methods (e.g. the mobile app or emergency key) to unlock the vehicle.

Caution

Radio waves may affect the performance of the key fob. Keep other electronic devices (e.g. phones, laptops and tablets) at least 30 cm away from the key fob.

Keyless Unlocking and Locking

When you carry a valid smart key with you, or have the Bluetooth key turned on from your mobile phone (like in your pocket or bag), you can unlock or lock the vehicle by touching the corresponding part of any outer door handle without taking out the key.



If you leave the key in the vehicle, or when any door is open (including the hood and liftgate), and when you press the lock button on any door to perform the keyless locking action outside the vehicle, the vehicle will not be fully locked in such a situation, and the horn will sound to alert you to take the key out of the vehicle or close the corresponding door.

Caution

To unlock/lock the vehicle without using a key, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK and that all doors, hood and liftgate are closed.

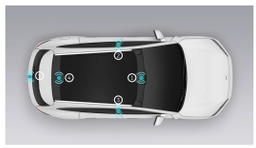
Caution

When locking the vehicle without a key, avoid pressing too hard on the exterior door handle.

Warning

Patients who are dependent on pacemakers should stay at least 22 centimeters away from the interior antennas, to avoid their cardiac pacemakers from being interfered by the keyless unlocking system's antenna.

Location of the interior Bluetooth antenna:



1. Under the rearview mirror cover
2. Above the B-pillar on the left side of the body
3. Above the B-pillar on the right side of the body
4. Rear roof
5. Above rear bumper bracket

Unlocking Start and Locking with NIO App

When you are far away from the vehicle, you can go to "My Vehicle" interface on the App, and tap "Door Locks" to remotely unlock the doors and start the vehicle or lock the doors. At this time, you can lend your vehicle to someone else.

You can select the following features to be enabled after the vehicle is unlocked:

- Unlock doors only

  Only the doors are unlocked, with the door handles extending automatically.

  At this moment, you can tap "Remote Start", and then sit in the driver seat and step on the brake pedal within 2 minutes to start the vehicle.

- Unlock and start the vehicle

  When the vehicle is unlocked with the door handles extended, it can be remotely started at the same time. Sit in the driver seat and step on the brake pedal within 2 minutes to start the vehicle.

  The vehicle will exit remote start after the driver finishes driving and leaves the seat. You can remotely start the vehicle again by tapping "Remote Start" on "My Vehicle" interface.

Note

If the Remote Start feature is activated and you do not press the brake pedal to start your vehicle within 2 minutes, your vehicle will automatically exit the remote start state. At this time, the "Remote Start" button can be pressed to start your vehicle.

To unlock and start, or lock the vehicle on the NIO App, make sure that the following requirements are met:

1. The user must be the vehicle's owner or authorized by the owner.
2. The vehicle is in PARK gear with all doors closed.
3. The mobile phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.
4. The phone's Unlocking/Locking via Bluetooth feature is disabled (otherwise this feature will be preferred).

Note

If you or an authorized user cannot unlock the vehicle using the NIO app, please contact NIO for assistance.

Unlocking/Locking via Bluetooth

The Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature enables you to easily and quickly unlock/lock the vehicle without a smart key fob.

First, open the NIO app. Tap **My Vehicle > Settings >Bluetooth Digital Key** to create a Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth service. Then enable this service and Bluetooth on your phone, and keep your phone close to an unlocked vehicle to pair the vehicle with your phone and activate this service. After successful activation, the top of the My Vehicle page will show that your phone has been connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth digital key, and then you can use the Bluetooth digital key to replace the smart key fob for unlocking and locking your vehicle. Then your phone will be automatically connected to your vehicle when approaching. You can also go to the Key Management page to manage the Bluetooth digital key or delete it as needed.

If the vehicle is in PARK, when you approach it (about 30–70 meters at maximum, which may vary according to the status of Bluetooth connection) with your phone's Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth enabled, you can perform the following operations:

- Tap the Unlock/Lock button on the My Vehicle page of the NIO app to unlock/lock the vehicle, with the door handles extending or retracting automatically.
- After unlocking your vehicle successfully with the Bluetooth digital key, you just need to get seated and close the driver's door and then press the brake pedal to start the vehicle.
- Carry your phone and touch the designated area on the door handle to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- After enabling the Walk-Up Unlocking feature on the center display, when you enter the specified range area around the vehicle with your phone, the vehicle will unlock automatically.
- After enabling the Walk-Away Lock feature on the center display, when you leave the vehicle for the specified distance with your phone, the vehicle will automatically lock.
- You can press the trunk switch or go to the My Vehicle page of the NIO app to open/close the truck.
- You can find your vehicle, adjust windows, your vehicle via the My Vehicle page of the NIO app.

Caution

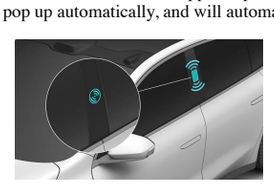
- If you fail to lock or unlock the vehicle with the Bluetooth digital key due to a Bluetooth connection error, fix the error and try again.
- If the Bluetooth connection between your phone and the vehicle fails when you try to start the vehicle with the Bluetooth digital key, please reconnect via Bluetooth and try again.
- The Bluetooth digital key is only available for a paired phone. If you use a new phone, create a new Bluetooth digital key, and the Bluetooth digital key on the previous phone will be disabled automatically. To log in to the account, you need to reactivate the Bluetooth digital key.
- Both the vehicle owner and authorized users can create a Bluetooth digital key, but the number of Bluetooth digital keys that can be paired with the vehicle is limited.
- Even though there are occupants in the vehicle, you can still lock the vehicle with the Bluetooth digital key. The occupants can get out of the vehicle when needed, but the anti-theft alarm system will be triggered.
- If a smart key fob or phone with the Bluetooth digital key is left in the vehicle, you can still lock the vehicle with smart key fob, and the NIO app will remind you of a key left in the vehicle.
- If an occupant accidentally takes the smart key fob or phone with the Bluetooth digital key out of the vehicle for more than 3 meters, the vehicle will remind you of a key out of the range.

NFC Unlocking and Locking

You, or the authorized user, can also use an NFC-enabled mobile phone or NFC card to unlock or lock the vehicle, and once the vehicle is unlocked, the liftgate can be opened from the outside. You can easily manage the NFC key and perform deletion operations on the key management interface.

To unlock or lock the vehicle from your phone:

1. Open **My Vehicle > Vehicle Info > NFC Key** in the mobile App, install the “NIO NFC Key” app and turn the “Local NFC Key” on, then you will see the “NFC” logo in the upper left corner of the “My Vehicle” interface.
2. Turn on the NFC feature of the mobile phone, and set NIO as the default payment app.
3. Keep the phone screen unlocked, put the NFC sensing area of the phone close to the NFC sensing area of the B-pillar on the driver’s side, then the app will prompt “NFC key is being used”. Once the vehicle is unlocked, the door handle will pop up automatically, and will automatically retract if the vehicle is locked along with a “click” locking sound.



Hold the NFC card close to the NFC sensing area of the B-pillar on the driver’s side and hold it there for a while, then the vehicle will be automatically unlocked or locked. Once the vehicle is unlocked, the door handle will pop up automatically, and will automatically retract if the vehicle is locked along with a “click” locking sound.

Caution

- The NFC's detection range is less than 10 millimeters. It is recommended to place your mobile phone or NFC card near the NFC detection area for a short period to unlock or lock the vehicle.
- After unlocking the vehicle via NFC, you can still lock it using other methods (e.g. your smart key fob or emergency key). We recommend carrying your smart key fob or phone with you.
- Please keep your NFC card safe. Protect it from impact, bending, high temperatures, strong vibration, and damage from liquids.

- You cannot use the NFC feature during vehicle updates. Please carry the smart key fob with you to unlock the vehicle.
- When unlocking or locking the vehicle via NFC, please log into the NIO app and redownload the NFC key if you are unable to obtain an authenticated NFC key. If an authenticated NFC key is not detected, please ensure that the vehicle matches the NFC account. Then reopen the NFC app and unlock the mobile phone screen to unlock or lock the vehicle again. If NFC still doesn't work, please contact NIO.

Unlocking and Locking on the Center Console

You can unlock or lock the vehicle with the lock button on the center console.

When the vehicle is fully unlocked and all doors are closed, press the lock button on the center console to lock the vehicle. The center display will display the locked status of the vehicle, and the LED on the button will light up green.

When the vehicle is fully locked (not from the outside) or only the driver’s door is unlocked, press the lock button on the center console to unlock the vehicle. The center display will display the unlocked status of the vehicle, and the LED on the button will go off.

Emergency Unlocking and Locking

Unlocking/Locking the Vehicle from Outside in an Emergency

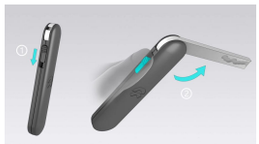
When the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the above conventional methods from the outside, you can use the physical emergency key to unlock or lock the driver's door.

Caution

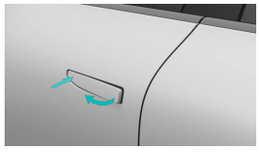
Do not leave the emergency key in your vehicle. Please keep it safe in case of emergency.

How to use the physical emergency key:

1. Toggle the slider on the physical emergency key, and pull out the metal key part of the emergency key.



2. Press and hold the front part of the outer door handle of the driver's door to unfold the outer door handle.



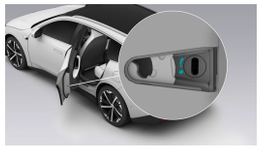
3. Hold the unfolded outer door handle with one hand while inserting the physical emergency key into the keyhole in the outer door handle with the other hand, and turn the key counterclockwise to unlock the driver's door.

4. When locking, press and hold the front part of the outer door handle, turn the physical emergency key counterclockwise for one unlocking action, and then turn the key clockwise to lock the driver's door.

Caution

To lock the vehicle with the key fob after it has been unlocked with the emergency key, reset the lock cylinder by unlocking and then locking the driver's door to keep the vehicle safe.

When the battery of the vehicle is depleted, the physical emergency key can only lock the driver's door. If you want to lock the other doors, toggle down the door lock hole, and simply close the door to lock it. However, in such a situation, the door cannot be opened from the outside.



Emergency Unlocking from Inside

When the whole vehicle is locked, if you need to open the door in an emergency (such as when the door handle electronic switch fails, or the vehicle is soaked in water), pull the mechanical switch of the inner door handle once to open the corresponding side door.

Caution

- When the 12V battery of the vehicle is low on power, the physical emergency key can only be used to unlock the door on the driver side. At such moments it cannot be used to unlock the whole vehicle. The other doors can only be unlocked and opened by pulling the mechanical switch for the inner door handle.
- The windows cannot be lowered when the door is opened using the mechanical switch for the inner door handle because doing so would risk damaging the window trim panel.
- Neither rear door can be opened from inside when the child safety lock function is enabled. They can only be opened from outside once the whole vehicle is unlocked.
- In the event of an accident that is of sufficient gravity to trigger airbag deployment, the child safety lock on the rear door will unlock automatically.

Walk Up Unlock

Walk Up Unlock works when you carry a valid smart key or a mobile phone with the Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature enabled. Without taking out the key, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked when you are within 1.5 meters from its B-pillar.

To enable or disable this feature, go to the Settings interface from control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Doors > Walk Up Unlock**.

Auto Unlock When In PARK

The vehicle can be automatically unlocked in PARK without using the lock function on the center display.

If the vehicle was locked automatically by Drive Away Lock (at a speed over 8 km/h), after the driver applies the brake to bring the vehicle to a halt and shifts into P gear, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked. After the vehicle is unlocked, the liftgate can be opened from the outside without a key.

You can configure how the vehicle will be automatically unlocked in PARK on the center display: go to the Settings interface from the bottom of the center display, and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Doors > Auto Unlock When In PARK**.

Walk Away Lock

Walk-away lock works when you carry a valid smart key or a mobile phone with the Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature enabled. Without taking out the key, the vehicle will be automatically locked when you are 3-7 meters away from it. When the vehicle is locked by walk-away lock, a lock confirmation sound will be produced, the turn lights will flash, and if Auto-Fold When Vehicle is Locked is enabled, the side mirrors will be folded automatically.

To enable this feature, you can go to the Settings interface from control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Doors > Walk Away Lock**. Please only use Walk Away Lock in familiar and safe parking areas. After Walk Away Lock is enabled, make sure to carry a valid smart key or enable the Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature on your mobile phone, and check that the vehicle is successfully locked as you walk away.

Warning

- When Walk-Away Lock is turned on, ensure that no child or pet is left in the vehicle so as to avoid any accidents.
- When using Walk-Away Lock, please ensure the vehicle is locked via the lock sound or visual checks (headlights, side mirrors or the NIO app), so as to protect the property inside your vehicle.
- When there is another authenticated smart key fob in the vehicle or any other condition for locking is not met (such as a door, the hood, or the liftgate not being closed or turning Walk-Away Lock off on the center display), Walk-Away Lock will fail.
- Please do not place your smart key fob close to a mobile phone, Bluetooth headset, or other communication devices. Otherwise, the vehicle may be locked by mistake due to signal interference.
- Equipment with a strong magnetic field such as DC chargers or high voltage substations may interfere with the smart key fob's signal, which may lock the vehicle by mistake in certain cases. It is recommended to carry your smart key fob with you to avoid any inconvenience caused by the unintended locking of the vehicle.

Drive-Away Locking

Your vehicle can automatically lock while driving.

When the vehicle is unlocked and all doors, the front hood, and the tailgate are closed, the vehicle automatically locks all doors when the driving speed exceeds 8 km/h.

Note

Drive Away Locking will only be activated once the vehicle transitions from being stationary to moving.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Once the vehicle is locked from the outside (including the hood and tailgate) with the smart key, mobile app, NFC feature or physical emergency key, the anti-theft alarm system will be automatically activated.

If someone tries to open the door in the absence of a valid smart key (or without valid authorization), the anti-theft alarm will be activated, and the turn lights and horn will both emit an alarm. You can unlock the vehicle from outside through the smart key, NIO app, and NFC feature to turn off the anti-theft alarm.

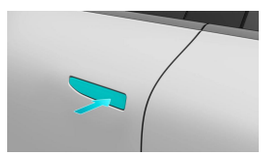
Door Handle

The outer door handles pop out automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, you can touch the inner side of the door handle to open the door handle by sensing, then the door pops slightly while the window drops a little, and you can open the door easily. When closing the door, just give it a push and the door will be magnetically closed from a half-closed position, achieving an easy and convenient door opening and closing experience.

You can turn the door handle sensing feature on/off on the center display: enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Doors > E-Latch Door Handles**.

The outer door handles retract automatically when the vehicle is locked or the vehicle speed exceeds 8 km/h.

You can configure the automatic door handle retraction on the center display. Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Doors > Door Handle Auto-Retraction**. After enabling the feature, the door handles will automatically retract in 20s after the vehicle is unlocked. This will prevent the handles from scratching pedestrians or the doors being opened by strangers. The door handles can pop out again by touching the sensing region on the handles.



Warning

When the door automatically closes or the exterior door handles automatically retract, please ensure that occupants (especially children) keep their hands away from the door handles. Failure to do so may result in personal injury.

Note

If the door handle fails to extend because you are wearing insulated gloves, you can pull the door handle slightly to open the door or lower the window.

Caution

If the exterior door handles cannot extend automatically, push the front end of the exterior door handle to deploy the corresponding handle.

You can open the door from inside by pressing the electronic switch on the corresponding inner door handle. Press once if the door is unlocked, or press twice if the door is locked, then the corresponding door will pop open and the window glass will lower slightly.

Caution

- When the vehicle's speed is higher than 3km/h, the electronic switch for the inner door handle will be automatically disabled. Pay attention to driving safety.
- The electronic switch for the inner door handle can only be turned on when there is a need to unbuckle the seat belt.
- The window is allowed to drop to 20mm above the lowest point when the rear door is opened; It is allowed to drop to the lowest point when the rear door is closed.

Easy Entry

After the doors are open, you and your family and friends can enter the vehicle and take a seat. The vehicle is equipped with various Easy Entry features.

Driver Easy Entry

You can set the most convenient exit position on the center display: when the vehicle is stationary and put in Park, and when you open the driver's door intending to get off the vehicle, the driver seat will automatically move to the exit position you set (including the vertical and horizontal position of the seat cushion, and the angle of the backrest), and the steering wheel will automatically move to the topmost position to provide you with convenient access for you to get off, and to get on next time.

You can turn this feature on/off on the center display: enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Seat > Driver > Driver Easy Entry**. You and the authorized users can set up exit positions under your respective accounts. After manually adjusting the exit position for the driver seat, tap **Position Adjustment > Seat > Driver > Seat Position Memory** > **Exit Position**, and the current position setting will be saved under this account. Every time the driver's door is opened or the seat belt is released (can be set up on the center display), the driver's seat will automatically move to the exit position saved under this account.

Caution

When setting the exit position, do not move the seat to the rearmost position or recline the backrest to the lowest position. Doing so may adversely affect the rear passengers. You can set the recommended optimal exit position on the center display.

Caution

After the driver's easy entry function is enabled, if you sit down in the driver seat and close the driver door (or press the brake pedal), the driver side seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirror will be automatically set to the driving position set in the driver seat memory page of the central display.

Front Passenger Easy Entry

When the vehicle is stationary and put in Park gear, and when you open the front passenger door, the front passenger seat will automatically move to the default position to provide the front passenger with an easy entry and exit.

You can turn this feature on/off on the center display: enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Seat > Passenger > Front Passenger Easy Entry**. There are two settings for Easy Entry:

- Exit: by unfastening the seat belt or opening the front passenger door (which can be set up on the center display), the seat will automatically move to the default position; when the passenger gets on the vehicle and closes the front passenger door, the seat does not move and remains in the position it was when the passenger got off the last time.
- Exit + Entry: by unfastening the seat belt or opening the front passenger door, the seat will automatically move to the default position; when the passenger gets on the vehicle and closes the front passenger door, the seat will automatically move to the regular position set under the corresponding account (to be set up on the center display under Front Passenger Seat > Position Memory).

Caution

When using Front Passenger Easy Entry, it is recommended that you set the default position appropriately, and pay attention to the surrounding environment and the safety of any passengers in the second row.

Liftgate

Opening and Closing the Liftgate by Pressing the Button

When you carry the smart key, lightly press the button on the handle of the liftgate to open the liftgate.

During the opening of the liftgate, press+hold the liftgate button for a few seconds, and the height of the liftgate at that moment can be automatically memorized.

Caution

Before opening the liftgate, ensure that it is clear of objects such as snow and ice. Otherwise, the liftgate may suddenly close on its own.

Your vehicle is equipped with a one-button liftgate closing feature.

Press the button on the liftgate to automatically close and lock the liftgate, and you will hear a “click” to confirm the closure.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate with the Center Display

Swipe right on the left edge of the center display to enter the Quick Access interface, then tap **Rear Trunk** to open the liftgate.

Opening the liftgate: press+hold **Press+Hold to Open**, and the liftgate will open automatically.

Closing the liftgate: press+hold **Press+Hold to Close**, and the liftgate will close automatically.

During the opening or closing of the liftgate, tap the liftgate opening or closing button, and the movement will stop.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate with the Smart Key

Opening the liftgate: press+hold the liftgate button on the smart key, and the liftgate will open automatically.

Closing the liftgate: press+hold the liftgate button on the smart key, and the liftgate will close automatically.

Caution

This feature is unavailable when the smart key fob battery is low. Please replace the battery as soon as possible.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate in the Mobile App

When the vehicle is put in Park and the doors are closed, you can open the My Vehicle interface in the NIO mobile App, and tap the **Rear Trunk** button to open the liftgate. It will prompt you that rear trunk has been opened. Tap the highlighted **Rear Trunk** button again to close the rear trunk. If it is blocked during the closing process, it will prompt you that the rear trunk has failed to close.

Caution

This operation is only available when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate by a Kicking Action

When your hands are occupied or it is inconvenient for you to take out the key, you can open the liftgate by kicking under the rear bumper.

In the middle of the rear bumper, lift a foot up close to the rear bumper and kick the forefoot into the rear bumper at least 10 cm deep, then retract quickly to open the liftgate; or sweep your forefoot sideways from one side to the other at least 10 cm below the rear bumper to open the liftgate.

You must have your mobile Bluetooth key or smart key with you to open the liftgate with a kicking action.

To avoid accidental opening caused by someone near the rear trunk, you can enter the Settings interface from the bottom of the center display, tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Hands-Free Liftgate**, and turn off the liftgate kick open/close feature.

Note

- When kicking transversely, please kick in one direction and do not move back and forth frequently.
- Do not park your feet under the bumper. Otherwise, the liftgate will not be activated.
- Do not touch the liftgate before it stops moving.

This feature may be temporarily disabled in situations that include but are not limited to the following:

- Frequent opening and closing
- A lingering leg
- When the kicking is not within the valid detection range

If the liftgate does not respond, wait a few seconds and try again, or use other methods to open or close the liftgate.

Caution

- Ensure that the vehicle is stationary.
- Ensure that the range of the kicking motion is roughly in the middle of the rear bumper.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate Manually

If the liftgate is not opened/closed properly, you need to manually open/close the liftgate in a slow and smooth motion.

Warning

Avoid opening and closing the liftgate vigorously and quickly, as this may result in component damage.

Anti-pinch Protection of the Liftgate

Your vehicle is equipped with liftgate anti-pinch protection.

If an obstacle restricts the movement of the liftgate during automatic opening or closing, the opening or closing motion will stop and the anti-pinch feature will be activated.

- The opening process is interrupted, the liftgate stops and you will hear a long warning tone.
- The closing process is interrupted, the liftgate stops, a long warning tone sounds, and the liftgate rises again for a certain distance.

Warning

To reduce the risk of being pinched, ensure that no one is near the liftgate operating area before opening or closing the liftgate.

Caution

Please ensure that the liftgate is closed while your vehicle is in motion.

Window Control

There are four buttons on the inside of the driver's door to control the four windows, which are placed there to make it convenient for the driver to control all the windows.

1. Driver's window
2. Front passenger window
3. Rear right window
4. Rear left window

There are also corresponding window buttons on the interior armrests of the other three doors, which are placed there to make it convenient for passengers to operate the windows.

- Toggle the window button forward to control the opening position of the window; quickly toggle this button forward all the way to the end and release it to fully open the window (one-touch window down).
- Toggle the window button backward to control the closing position of the window; quickly toggle this button backward all the way to the end and release it to fully close the window (one-touch window up).

In addition, you can also tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Windows** from the center display Settings interface, and select Close, Ajar and Open to control the entire car windows.

- **Close:**When this function is turned on, all windows will be closed.
- **Open:**When this function is turned on, all windows will be opened.
- **Ajar:**When this function is turned on, all windows will be opened for about 25mm.
- **Favorite:**Press+hold it to remember the current positions of all windows, and once it is turned on, the windows will move to the memorized positions.

When the vehicle is put in Park and no one is in the driver's seat, you can control the windows using the smart key: when the doors, hood and liftgate are all closed, press+hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower all the windows; then press+hold the lock button to lift all the windows; during the lifting or lowering of the windows, release the unlock or lock button to stop the windows at the current position.

The vehicle's four windows all have anti-pinch protection. When there is a foreign object blocking the movement of the window, the closing motion will stop and the window will be lowered down again for a certain distance.

The area subject to anti-pinch protection is shown in the figure below:

When the following situations occur, the anti-pinch protection of the corresponding window will be temporarily disabled, and the one-touch window up feature will also be disabled (these two features will be automatically restored after 10 seconds):

1. When the window ices up and the closing motion is interrupted.
2. When the closing motion is interrupted three times in a row within a span of 15 seconds due to anti-pinch protection.

If the automatic window lifting/lowering and anti-pinch protection feature fails (by restarting after the depletion of the 12V battery, for example), you can re-initialize it as follows:

1. Toggle the corresponding window button backward to lift the window glass until it rises to the top.
2. Release the button and the window glass will drop a little bit. Toggle the button backward again until the window glass rises to the top.
3. Press the window button to lower the window glass until it reaches the bottom.

Sunshade

The sunshade controls the sunlight and radiation effectively by changing the light transmittance of the glass sunroof.

The sunshade has three modes: shade, clear, and automatic.

Shade Mode: The glass sunroof has the lowest light transmittance, which can prevent glare and provide certain heat insulation.

Clear Mode: The glass sunroof offers a clear view of the sky and has the maximum light transmission.

Automatic Mode: The glass sunroof will automatically switch between Shade mode and Clear mode based on the light intensity and duration.

You can access the Settings interface by tapping the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Windows** to select a mode. You can also switch modes quickly from the rear control display and Quick Access interface, or simply ask Nomi to do it.

Caution

- In automatic mode, when the external environment is bright and lasts for a few minutes, the vehicle will automatically switch to shade mode; it will quickly switch back to clear mode once the external environment has been dark for a few minutes.
- The sunshade feature has a frequent operation protection mechanism. After several consecutive operations, it will not respond to the dimming requirement and will resume after 20 seconds.
- The operating temperature range of the sunshade is -15°C~65°C.
- When the glass temperature is below -15 °C, the sunshade enters a thermal protection state so that it remains in its original state and cannot be adjusted temporarily. When the glass temperature rises to the operating range, the sunshade will resumes its normal use.
- When the glass temperature reaches 65 °C or above, the sunshade enters a thermal protection state and can only be manually switched to Automatic Mode or Shade Mode. If the sunshade is in Transparent Mode and remains in an ultra-high temperature state for a long time (above 85 °C), the sunshade will automatically switch to a shade state to reduce heat input and protect your vehicle. When the glass temperature returns to the operating range, the sunshade will resume its normal use.
- The sunshade will automatically switch to shade mode when the vehicle is locked, and the settings will be restored when you use the vehicle again.

Stone Guard Film

The stone guard film is located on both sides of the wheels at the rear of the body, which can effectively prevent the body paint from being scratched by hard granular objects such as gravel during fast driving, so as to maintain the integrity and aesthetics of the paint.

Note

Never remove the film partially or completely without any additional protection, otherwise the body paint may be damaged.

Charging Instructions

In order to maintain the vehicle in good condition, please promptly charge the vehicle when the battery level is low.

Caution

The vehicle can only be charged in PARK. It cannot be charged in DRIVE or REVERSE, or during software updates.

The charge port is on the left side of the vehicle. The vehicle can be charged with DC **or AC**.

Warning

- To avoid accidents, do not charge the vehicle near any flammable gases or liquids and make sure to charge the vehicle in a ventilated area.
- During charging, stay a safe distance from the charger to avoid any risks due to high voltage. Do not touch the charging connector's metal pins or the charge port. Doing so may result in injury.
- Minors are prohibited from using the charging equipment or approaching it during charging.
- Charging equipment which shows signs of damage, rust, moisture or foreign matter should not be used for charging the vehicle.
- Unauthorized modification or disassembly of the charging connector or equipment is prohibited.

- Please use charging equipment that complies with local standards when charging the vehicle. Otherwise, it may result in a charging failure or cause damage to the vehicle, the charging equipment, or personal injury.
- Do not charge the vehicle in heavy rain or extreme weather conditions. Doing so may result in a charging failure or cause damage to either the vehicle or the charging equipment.
- Before charging, please check the charging connector and the vehicle's charge port for any deformation, burn marks, or erosion. If any abnormality is found, do not charge the vehicle. Otherwise, it may result in damage to the vehicle, the charging device, or personal injury. Please contact NIO if necessary.
- Before charging, please check the charging connector and the vehicle's charge port for any dirt or foreign matter. The connector should be kept clean and failure to do so may result in a charging failure or damage to the vehicle's charge port.
- If the charging equipment malfunctions, please contact the charging equipment manufacturer. Do not attempt to fix it yourself.
- After rain, please check if there is water in the charge port before charging the vehicle. Do not charge the vehicle when there is an obvious indicator of water in the charge port. Doing so may result in a charging failure or cause damage to either the vehicle or the charging equipment.
- Do not use high pressure washers to clean the charge port while charging. Doing so may result in a charging failure or cause damage to either the vehicle or the charging equipment.
- During fast charging, patients who are dependent on cardiac pacemakers should stay away from the vehicle in order to avoid electromagnetic interference between the cardiac pacemaker and the charging equipment. .
- If the vehicle has a peculiar smell or emits smoke while charging, stop charging and contact NIO immediately.
- Do not remove the charging connector before charging is completed. Doing so may cause an electric arc.

Caution

If the environmental temperature is too high or too low, the charging time will be affected. If the vehicle is kept in a low temperature environment for a long period of time, the battery capacity will be affected.

Charging Operations

You can charge the vehicle on both Power Home and Power Charger.

Charging Process

1. Put the vehicle in Park, press the charge port cover to open it, or swipe right on the main interface of the center display to enter Quick Access and tap **Charge Port**, and the charge port cover will automatically open. The indicator of the charge port will light up white steadily.

   Caution

   Do not forcefully adjust the charge port cover when it is active or open. Doing so may damage the cover.

2. Check whether the charging connector and charging equipment are in good condition, align the charger to the charge port of the vehicle, then the charger and the charge port will start matching: if the indicator of the charge port flashes and then lights up blue, the charge port is working properly; if the matching fails or times out, the indicator of the charge port will flash blue and then go out, and you will need to connect the charger again.

3. Turn the charging equipment on and start charging. You can tap **Battery** on the Settings interface of the center display or use the mobile App to check the current charging status. The indicator of the charge port should be blue during charging to indicate that it is charging.

4. If you are to manually stop charging midway, tap **Battery** on the Settings interface of the center display after the vehicle is fully unlocked to stop charging, and wait for the indicator of the charge port to light up green steadily to unplug the charger.

   When the charging is completed, press the unlock button of the charger before unplugging the charger.

   Caution

   - In the process of DC fast charging, you can unlock the vehicle first, and then press+hold the OFF button at the charging port to manually stop charging.
   - When inserting and removing the charger, please face the charging socket. If the charger is stuck, try to lift it slightly. Do not forcibly shake the charger while inserting or removing it to prevent the charger or charging socket from being damaged.
   - During the charging process, do not forcefully pull out the charger directly. Otherwise, there may be sparks and smoke on the charging socket, endangering personal safety.

5. If the indicator of the charge port flashes red during charging, switch to another Power Home and try again. If the indicator is still flashing red, stop charging immediately and contact the NIO Service Center.

6. After unplugging and putting away the charger, press down on the charge port cover, press the charge port close button, or tap **Charge Port** on the center display, and the charge port cover will be automatically closed.

   Note

   When you charge your vehicle using NIO Power Home, the charge port cover will automatically open if you remove the charger from the port and will automatically close if you remove the charger from your vehicle. **If the charge port cover is stuck on the charger while rotating to close automatically, press+hold the close button for 5 seconds, and the charge port cover will open automatically.**

Unable to Unplug the Charger after Charging

If you are unable to unplug the charger after the vehicle is fully unlocked, try unplugging charger according to the steps below:

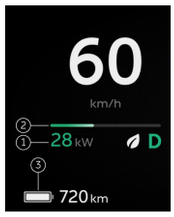
1. Re-plug in the charger to ensure that the unlock button of the charger pops up, and re-lock and unlock the whole vehicle, then press and hold the unlock button of the charger for 1 to 2 seconds, wait until the indicator of the charge port lights up green steadily and then unplug the charger.

2. Open the rear trunk cover, pull the emergency unlocking cable of the electronic lock of the charge port, and then try to unplug the charger.

3. If you still cannot unplug the charger, stop charging immediately and contact the NIO Service Center.

Battery Level and Charging Display

The status of the current high-voltage battery and some warning information related to the battery can be displayed on the digital instrument cluster.



1. Current Power Display

   It indicates the current power value of the high-voltage battery when it provides power or recovers energy from regenerative braking.

2. High-voltage Battery Energy Bar

   This energy bar indicates the power provided by the high-voltage battery; a green energy bar indicates the power during regenerative braking.

3. Range

   It indicates the remainder range supported by the high-voltage battery in the current state.

   When the remainder range is less than 60 km (the value is configurable), the icon turns yellow; when it is less than 10 km, the icon turns red.

Before charging or after stopping the vehicle, you can configure the desired charging settings on the center display. When the predetermined charge limit is reached, the charging will be automatically stopped and a reminder will be displayed on the instrument panel, which fulfills the needs of users in different scenarios and delivers a truly user-friendly charging experience. The charging upper limit of this feature is set to 90% by default; however, you may access the Settings interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Battery** to slide the battery in the vehicle model for adjustment; the adjustment range is 50%-100%.

You can access the Vehicle Information option through the menu button on the right side of the steering wheel, and view the current and voltage values of the current high-voltage battery.

The indicators related to the battery level on the digital instrument cluster are as follows:

Displayed Icon on Instrument Panel	Description
	Normal indicator of high-voltage battery This indicator indicates that the current high-voltage battery is operating normally.
	Low battery indicator of high-voltage battery This indicator indicates that the current high-voltage battery is low on power. Please charge it in time. Please contact the NIO Service Center if necessary.
	High-voltage battery cut-off warning light At this time, your vehicle is not energized by the high-voltage battery. Please contact the NIO Service Center if necessary.
	Low voltage battery charging fault warning light If this warning light illuminates, please contact the NIO Service Center immediately.
	High-voltage battery fault warning light If this warning light illuminates, please stop the car immediately and contact the NIO Service Center.
	High-voltage battery over-temperature warning light If this warning light illuminates, please stop the car immediately and contact the NIO Service Center.
	Ice- and snow-covered road indicator This indicator lights up to indicate that the current ambient temperature is too low, which may affect the performance of the high-voltage battery.

	Charging cable connected indicator This indicator lights up to indicate that the charging cable is currently connected.

Battery Preconditioning

The charging speed of high-voltage batteries slows down in cold conditions such as winter. When the Battery Preconditioning feature is enabled, the high-voltage battery can be warmed up to a certain extent in advance before the vehicle reaches the energy replenishment point (Power Home) to improve the charging speed of the vehicle.

On-Route Battery Warmup

The On-Route Battery Warmup feature is enabled by default. You can go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and select to enter the **Battery** interface to disable the feature. After this feature is enabled, when the destination or waypoint in the navigation state is the charging station , the vehicle will automatically start the high-voltage battery preconditioning on the premise that it can ensure arrival at the destination, so as to improve the charging efficiency. On-Route Battery Warmup only advances the battery warming step and does not waste additional charging energy.

In the navigation state, the On-Route Battery Warmup feature will be automatically activated under the following conditions. The current preconditioning status will be displayed on the status bar at the top of the center display:

- The navigation destination or waypoint is a Charging Station , or a service area with a Charging Station .
- The driver is seated.
- The current remainder range is more than 120 km.
- The vehicle is not in ECO+ mode.

You can manually disable the On-Route Battery Warmup feature by selecting "Disable This Time" (enabled by default next time) or "Keep Disabled".

This feature will automatically deactivate the preconditioning process (the switch remains on) in one of the following conditions:

- Connect a charger.
- Turn off the navigation or stop navigating to the Charging Station .
- The current remainder range does not support a preconditioning to the destination with 20 km remaining.
- The vehicle enters ECO+ mode.

Manual Battery Warmup

The Manual Battery Warmup feature is disabled by default. If you are familiar with the charging route and do not need to follow the navigation guide to the charging point, it is recommended to enter the **Battery** interface on the center display in a low temperature environment and enable the Manual Battery Warmup feature. The vehicle will enable the high-voltage battery preconditioning to improve charging efficiency. When starting Manual Battery Warmup, it is necessary to ensure that the ambient temperature is below 20 °C and the vehicle's remainder range is greater than 10 kilometers.

You can enable or disable the Manual Battery Warmup feature on the center display . The status bar at the top of the center display shows the current preconditioning status.

This feature will automatically deactivate the preconditioning process (the switch is off now) in one of the following conditions:

- Connect a charger.
- The On-Route Battery Warmup feature is enabled.
- The battery has been warmed up to the set temperature and maintained for 1 hour.
- The vehicle enters ECO+ mode.

Caution

- Activating the battery preconditioning feature will increase power consumption to a certain extent. Please plan your trip in a reasonable manner or use this feature appropriately.
- After the On-Route Battery Warmup feature is activated, the Manual Battery Warmup feature will not be available.
- The Manual Battery Warmup feature cannot determine the impact of preconditioning on the range to the destination on its own. Please pay attention closely to whether the current range supports reaching the destination before activating this feature.

Smart Charging

Smart charging can reduce cost in home charging for those users, who have a dynamic or day/night energy tariff at their home by automatically charging vehicle at cheaper times.

Two types of smart charging as follows:

- NIO smart charging: works with every energy provider.
- Tibber smart charging: works only with Tibber, user needs to subscribe to their energy contract.

As NIO smart charging and Tibber smart charging might influence each other, users should have activated only one smart charging solution per location.

NIO Smart Charging

Feature can be activated in vehicle settings and will be remembered in this location.

How does it work:

1. User plugs in vehicle at an AC charger, preferred at home.
2. User activates feature via vehicle settings (**Vehicle Settings > Battery**) .
3. User selects charging strategy:
   - *Dynamic price optimization* chooses the cheapest hours to charge the required energy amount until the end time set by the user.
   - *Preferred charging times* delays charging to the user configured time.
4. User sets time when charging should be done on a daily basis (example 7:30 am). NIO will create charging plan based on the settings and user information. The vehicle will start and stop automatically according to the plan.
   - *Dynamic price optimization* will start and stop charging to catch the cheapest hours until the end time that was set by the user.
   - *Preferred charging times* delays charging to the user configured time.

   If the charging light turns orange, it means that the smart charging reservation is successful and the car is ready for charging. If the light turns white, it means the charging is completed.
5. Vehicle will be done charging the next day at the time that user set.
6. All the smart charging settings will be saved specifically in each Smart Charging location. If the users reenters the locations, all the settings will be automatically recovered.
7. Smart charging function supports the creation of up to 10 locations. Unwanted locations can be removed on the navigation page - Favorites Management page. This function only activates for AC charging.

Tibber Smart Charging

User needs to subscribe to the Tibber electricity contract and have a smart meter at home. Activation is possible with every AC charging station/home charging cable.

How does it work:

1. User subscribes to Tibber.
2. User is onboarded by Tibber, opens the App.
3. User activates the Power-Up "NIO" in the Tibber App.
4. User logs in once with the NIO credentials.
5. User sets the departure times per weekday day in Tibber App.
6. Vehicle charging at the Tibber Home location will be controlled by Tibber from now on.
7. User can always control the charging in the Tibber App. To stop Tibber from controlling your vehicle altogether - go to the Power-ups section in the Tibber app and disconnect the NIO Power-up. Or contact the Tibber support.

Specifically for problems (App doesn't work, charging doesn't work, etc...) or general questions (how do I sign up, when will my account be active, etc...), please direct them to the local Tibber.com, which redirects to the local website.

High and Low Beams

You can adjust the state of the high and low beams through the light control lever on the left side of the steering wheel.

- Push the light control lever forward to turn on the Auto High Beams (AHB); push it forward again to turn on the high beams.
- Pull the light control lever backward to turn off the high beams; push the lever back and forth to control the flashing.

Note

Auto High Beams are only available when the headlights are set to the Auto mode or the feature is turned on.

Caution

The headlights and taillights of your vehicle may produce fog, frost, etc. in low temperature or high humidity environments, which are normal physical phenomena. After your vehicle is parked at room temperature for a period of time, the fog or frost will disappear.

To make manual adjustments, use the light control lever on the left side of the steering wheel.

- To enable Auto High Beams (AHB), push the light control lever forward, and the instrument panel displays the Auto High Beams (AHB) icon ; pushing the lever forward again activates the high beam headlights and displays its icon on the instrument panel.
- If the Auto High Beams (AHB) feature is turned off, moving the light control lever forward will switch only between the high and low beams.

To turn off the high beams and Auto High Beams (AHB), move the light control lever backward and release it.

Note

Auto High Beams are only available when the headlights are set to the Auto mode or the feature is turned on.

After the light control lever is moved backward and released, the high beams will flash once.

Caution

The headlights and taillights of your vehicle may produce fog, frost, etc. in low temperature or high humidity environments, which are normal physical phenomena. After your vehicle is parked at room temperature for a period of time, the fog or frost will disappear.

Turn Lights

- Turn left: move the light control lever down
- Turn right: move the light control lever up

The turn signal lights go off when the steering wheel returns, or when you move the control lever back to the middle.

When the turn lights light up, the corresponding indicator light on the digital instrument cluster will light up as well, accompanied by a “tick-tock” sound.

Fog Lights

You can turn on the front and rear fog lights by pressing the button on the top of the light control lever. When the fog lights light up, the position lights will be automatically turned on as well.

The sequence by which the lights turn on is:

- Press the first time: turn on front fog lights.
- Press the second time: turn on rear fog lights.
- Press the third time: turn off rear fog lights.
- Press the fourth time: turn off front fog lights.

If pressed again, the above sequence will be repeated.

When the fog lights light up, the corresponding indicator light on the digital instrument cluster will light up as well, indicating the status of the feature being turned on.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Lights > Exterior Lighting**. Press **Front Fog Lights** and **Rear Fog Lights** to turn on/off the front/rear fog lights.

Alternatively, swipe right from the left of the center display to enter the Quick Access interface, and press **Front Fog Lights** and **Rear Fog Lights** to turn on/off the front/rear fog lights.

Position Lights

When Position Lights feature is activated, the front and rear position lights are kept on.

How to activate:

- Method 1: Lock your vehicle after turning on the hazard warning flashers and keep the hazard warning flashers on
- Method 2: Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving and Parking > Camping Mode** to turn on camping mode. The interface off time is set to 10 s; then tap **Lights > Exterior Lighting > Position Lights** to set the lights as the position lights . Turn off the air conditioning, music and other equipment in your vehicle; lock your vehicle after the interface is off to keep the exterior front and rear position lights on.

Note

The activation of the position lights has a significant impact on your range. Please use the position lights reasonably.

Welcome Lighting

When you or an authorized user carries a valid smart key or a mobile phone with the Unlocking/Locking via Bluetooth feature enabled and approaches the vehicle at a maximum distance of about 10 meters, the low beams and position lights will be automatically turned on to welcome you. At this time, the vehicle will match your account information and automatically retrieve your personalized settings to make corresponding adjustments in advance before you unlock and open the doors, such as seat settings, air conditioning settings, media settings, and interior light settings.

Outer Door Handle Courtesy Lights

Each outer door handle is equipped with a door handle courtesy light. The outer door handles will automatically pop out when the entire vehicle is unlocked, and the outer door handle courtesy lights will be turned on to illuminate the area around the door for you. The outer door handle courtesy lights will be turned off when the outer door handles are retracted.

Interior Reading Lights

Auto Control of Reading Lights

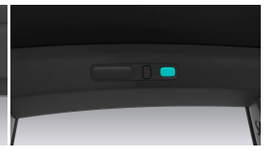
When you unlock the whole vehicle or open any door (including the liftgate), the interior reading lights will automatically light up to illuminate the inside of the vehicle. The reading lights will be automatically turned off in one of the following situations, by then you can manually turn the reading lights on by touching the reading light touch switch on the roof:

- Driving
- Locking the vehicle from the outside
- 10 minutes after the door is opened
- 15 seconds after all doors are closed

Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Lights > Interior Lighting > Auto Reading Lights** to control the automatic turning on of the reading lights.

Manual Control of Reading Lights

You can turn the interior reading lights on manually to provide lasting illumination for the passenger compartment for you to tidy up, and read maps or documents. There are touch switches to control the reading lights on the roof. By touching the reading light switch, you can control the turning on/off of each reading light separately. There is also a master switch on the center display for controlling all the reading lights. You can enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Lights > Interior Lighting > Reading Lights** to turn all interior reading lights on/off at the same time with this master switch.



When you lock the vehicle from the outside (using the smart key or mobile App feature), all interior reading lights will be turned off at the same time.

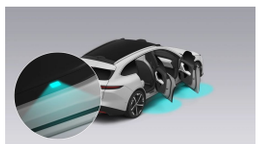
Note

- If the front reading lights are turned on through a separate switch in the headliner, they cannot be turned on or off through the main reading light switch, and can only be controlled through the separate switch. If the front reading lights are turned off, the front and rear reading lights can be turned on or off simultaneously through the main reading light switch.
- When your vehicle is not locked externally, if the front reading lights are turned on manually through the touch switch in the headliner, they will not be turned off automatically and need to be turned off manually.

Puddle Lights

There is a puddle light under each of the four vehicle doors, providing convenience for entry and exit at night; there are also two puddle lights on the liftgate to help you see the ground conditions clearly (such as mud pits, water puddles, etc.) when putting things away.

By opening the door or liftgate, the corresponding puddle light will be turned on. The puddle light will go out 10 minutes after the door is opened, or when the door is closed.



Smart Ambient Lighting

The vehicle is equipped with adjustable smart ambient lighting on the door panels, storage, and floorboard. You can choose your favorite ambient lighting effect to create a pleasant driving experience.

After you are seated, you can enable the ambient lighting feature on the center display. The vehicle will show the default ambient lighting effect in the current drive mode; go to the Settings interface from the bottom of the center display, and tap **Lights > Ambient Lighting** to select the color and brightness for the ambient lighting of different position (main colors, auxiliary colors, and floorboard). This setting will be saved in your personal settings. You can also set different ambient lighting modes, such as Breathing and Rhythmic. This setting will be saved on the center display.

The interior ambient lighting is also linked with the Door Open Warning (DOW) feature. When any door is about to be opened, the ambient lighting on the corresponding side will turn red.

Vanity Mirror Lighting

There are two sun visors on the roof of the vehicle, where a vanity mirror is provided, which can provide lighting when it is opened.

Follow Me Home

The vehicle is equipped with the “Follow Me Home” feature. When you lock your vehicle and are ready to leave it at night, the low beams and position lights will be turned on to illuminate the road ahead for you.

Go to the Settings interface from the bottom of the center display, and tap **Lights > Exterior Lighting > Follow Me Home** to set the duration of the headlights.

Minimal Lights

When the vehicle is parked, you can go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Lights > Interior Lighting > Minimal Lights** to enable the function. All ambient lighting, reading lights, and headlights will be turned off to achieve "one-click minimal lighting".

If Minimal Lights is manually turned off, the prior lighting configuration will be reinstated.

If you manually adjust the exterior lights, ambient lighting or reading lights when Minimal Lights is active, the Minimal Lights will be automatically disabled.

Full Brightness

To enable the function, navigate to the Settings interface via the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Lights > Interior Lighting > Full Brightness**. To assist you in finding objects in the vehicle, all ambient lighting and

reading lights will be turned on to maximum brightness.

If Full Brightness is manually turned off, the prior lighting configuration will be reinstated.

If you manually adjust the exterior lights, ambient lighting or reading lights when Full Brightness is active, the Full Brightness will be automatically disabled.

Soft Glow

To enable the function, navigate to the Settings interface via the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Lights > Interior Lighting > Soft Glow**. To provide a comfortable sleeping environment, the ambient lighting on the floorboard inside the vehicle will be slightly lit in warm yellow, and the ambient lighting and reading lights on the doors and storage will be turned off.

If Soft Glow is manually turned off, the prior lighting configuration will be reinstated.

If you manually adjust the exterior lights, ambient lighting or reading lights when Soft Glow is active, the Soft Glow will be automatically disabled.

Rear trunk Lighting

The storage space lights come on automatically when the tailgate is opened.

The storage space light switches off automatically when the tailgate is closed or after 10 minutes of being on.

Linking Key Fob to Account

When the vehicle is activated and verified for the first time, the owner’s account will be linked to the key fob by default. When the vehicle is unlocked with one of the key fobs, the vehicle will log into the owner’s account automatically.

Owner can also link an authorized user account to a smart key fob by managing the key fob in the NIO app. When an authorized user unlocks the vehicle using a key fob, the vehicle will log into the linked user’s account automatically. You can view and delete accounts linked to the key fobs on the NIO app. After linking or unlinking a account successfully, the vehicle owner and the account owner will receive a message and an app notification.

Note

- Only the vehicle owner can modify the binding relationship between the key and the account. Other NIO accounts must be authorized before they can be bound to the key.
- If the vehicle owner stops the authorization, the binding relationship between the authorized user and the key will be automatically released synchronously.
- Guest mode is only applicable to smart keys bound to the vehicle owner's account. When the vehicle is unlocked with the smart key bound to the authorized user account, the authorized user information will be loaded automatically.

Switching Accounts

You or an authorized user can switch between user accounts on the center display to load the corresponding settings (for example, seat, steering wheel, , etc.).

You, a co-user or an authorized user can switch between user accounts on the center display and load the corresponding settings in either of the following two ways:

1. When the vehicle is connected to the network, or there is currently no network available but you have logged in in the past, tap the profile photo on the center display or **Account > Switch Accounts** in Settings to view a list of all the valid accounts (including the owner's account, co-user accounts, and authorized user accounts). Tap the corresponding profile photo or user name to switch to the account, and log in with this account after verification (by scanning the QR code with the NIO app or entering the verification code received on your phone). You can also enable Passwordless Login in **Accounts > Face ID and Password** for easy login and account switch.
2. To switch accounts automatically through face recognition, tap your profile photo on the center display or **Settings > Account > Face ID and Password**, and enter face recognition data to enable this feature. After you unlock the vehicle and enter the driver's seat, look straight ahead, and the vehicle will automatically recognize the corresponding account information and load the corresponding custom settings. If the recognized user's face doesn't match the current account, but matches another valid account (for example, this may happen if you've lent the key fob to a family member), the vehicle will automatically switch the account to match the current user.

Caution

- You can only switch accounts when the vehicle is not being driven.
- In Guest Mode, the vehicle will not save any customized settings (such as the driver's seat position).

Authorized Unlocking

If you want to lend your vehicle to others, you can authorize users registered on the NIO App to use your vehicle. An authorized user can access authorized features by using their NFC key or verified NIO App.

Authorization by Owner

You can tap **Profile Photo > Account Settings** on the Settings interface of the NIO App or in the upper left corner of the center display, and then enter the gesture password of your vehicle to go to the authorization management interface.

You can authorize a user and set related authorized features by entering his/her NIO App user name. Up to nine users can be authorized. After setting the user's authorization, you can tap the profile photo or user name of the authorized user to view the user's detailed information and authorized features (such as media, video and safe box). If the current authorization is active, you can also edit the range of authorized access or disable the user's authorization. An authorized user can only access authorized features, and cannot manage authorization or set the guest mode.

After the vehicle is locked, if you unlock the vehicle using your smart key, the vehicle will automatically log in to the owner's account.

Note

For safety reasons, if you cancel authorization when an authorized user is driving the vehicle, it won't take effect until the authorized user stops and locks the vehicle.

Note

If the authorized user has a NIO account, the authorization will take effect immediately after it is completed. If the authorized user doesn't have a NIO account, the authorization will become effective only after the user registers a NIO account.

Unlocking by an Authorized User

An authorized user can unlock the vehicle using his/her NFC key or NIO App. To view the account information and authorized features of an authorized user, tap his/her profile photo on the center display:

- NFC unlocking: Open the NFC key App on the mobile phone and place it close to the center area of vehicle body on the left side.
- Remote unlocking by NIO App: Tap "Door Locks" on the "My Vehicle" interface in NIO App.

Guest Mode

If you want to lend the vehicle to others by giving them a smart key fob, tap your profile photo on the center display and choose Guest Mode to protect your privacy (e.g. navigation history, contacts, videos, photos). Only default features such as climate control, weather and navigation (with no access to History or Favorites) are available to guests.

With the Guest Mode on, the vehicle will show the features exclusive to the Guest Mode after the vehicle user unlocks and enters the vehicle by using the smart key. To exit the Guest Mode, enter the gesture password of the vehicle.

Caution

1. You can only set Guest Mode when the vehicle is not being driven.
2. If a smart key fob is linked to the owner's account and your vehicle is not in Guest Mode, the vehicle will automatically log into the owner's account when a user unlocks the vehicle using a smart key fob.

Service Authorization

You or an authorized user can send a service request to NIO on the NIO app. NIO manages and authorizes service specialists to temporarily access the vehicle and conduct the requested service (e.g. One Click for Power). NIO retrieves the authorization after the service is completed.

After obtaining authorization, service specialists can unlock the vehicle using an NFC key within a specified time frame and use authorized features. The center display shows the account information of the authorized service specialist and the authorized features available to them. Authorized service specialists cannot manage authorization, set Guest Mode, link the vehicle to a key fob, or switch accounts.

Caution

After the service is completed, all doors and the liftgate should be locked. If a door or the liftgate is not locked, you will be notified on the NIO app.

Driver Seat Position Memory Adjustment

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Seat > Driver > Seat Position Memory** to configure your personalized settings. According to the preferences set for the user account, the vehicle will automatically adjust the driver seat, steering wheel, side mirrors, and to the corresponding user's habitual state. After adjusting the front passenger seat forward or backward or its backrest position with the buttons on it, you can press the button **Drive/Alternate/Rest/Exit** on the driver's seat memory interface on the center display to set up personalized positions in different scenes and save the modified settings to the corresponding user's personal account.

After you are seated in the driver's seat (the driver's door needs to be closed), press the button of the corresponding position on the driver's memory interface. The vehicle will automatically adjust the seat to the latest personalized settings in this position saved by the user.

If the user changes the settings again during use of the vehicle (such as the position of the driver seat), tap the **Save** button of the corresponding position on the driver's memory interface, and the updated settings will be saved in the corresponding position under the user's personal account to replace the original settings.

Warning

To prevent accidents, do not adjust your seat position while driving.

Caution

- Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat and steering wheel are clear of obstacles, and the rear seats are unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.
- While driving, do not operate any buttons on the memory interface on the center display to adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or side mirrors and be mindful of your safety.

Front Passenger Seat Position Memory Adjustment

Before using the front passenger seat memory feature, you are required to put the vehicle in P gear. Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Position Adjustment > Seat > Front Passenger > Seat Position Memory**, and configure your personalized settings on this interface (default position cannot be changed). After adjusting the position of the front passenger seat with the buttons on it, you can press the button **Regular/Alternate/Rest/Other**on the front passenger seat memory interface on the center display to set up personalized positions in different scenes and save the modified settings to the corresponding user's personal account.

After you are seated in the front passenger seat, press the button of the corresponding position on the front passenger seat memory interface, and the vehicle will automatically adjust the seat to the latest personalized settings in this position saved by the user.

If the user changes the front passenger seat position again during use of the vehicle, tap the **Save** button of the corresponding position on the front passenger seat memory interface, and the updated settings will be saved in the corresponding position under the user's personal account to replace the original settings.

Caution

Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat is clear of obstacles, the footrest is stowed, and the rear seat is unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.

Steering Wheel Position Memory Adjustment

You can go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Steering Wheel > Seat Position Memory** to configure your personalized settings. After adjusting the position of the steering wheel with the buttons on it, you can press the button **Drive/Alternate/Rest/Other** on the driver's seat memory interface on the center display to set up personalized positions in different scenes and save the modified settings to the corresponding user's personal account.

After you are seated in the driver's seat (the driver's door needs to be closed), press the button of the corresponding position on the driver's memory interface, and the steering wheel will be automatically adjusted to the latest personalized settings in this position saved by the user.

If the user changes the settings again during use of the vehicle (such as the position of the steering wheel), tap the **Save** button of the corresponding position on the driver's memory interface, and the updated settings will be saved in the corresponding position under the user's personal account to replace the original settings.

Warning

- To prevent accidents, do not adjust the position of your steering wheel while driving.
- Improper adjustment of the steering wheel position or an improper sitting posture can cause injury. It is recommended that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest be no less than 25 centimeters.

Caution

- Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat and steering wheel are clear of obstacles, and the rear seats are unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.
- While driving, do not operate any buttons on the memory interface on the center display to adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or side mirrors and be mindful of your safety.

Side Mirrors Position Memory Adjustment

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Side Mirrors > Position Memory** to configure your personalized settings. After adjusting the position of the side mirrors, you can press the button **Drive/Alternate/Rest/Other** on the driver's seat memory interface on the center display to set up personalized positions in different scenes and save the modified settings to the corresponding user's personal account.

After you are seated in the driver's seat (the driver's door needs to be closed), press the button of the corresponding position on the driver's memory interface, and the side mirrors will be automatically adjusted to the latest personalized settings in this position saved by the user.

If the user changes the settings again during use of the vehicle (such as the position of the side mirrors), tap the **Save** button of the corresponding position on the driver's memory interface, and the updated settings will be saved in the corresponding position under the user's personal account to replace the original settings.

Warning

To prevent accidents, do not adjust the side mirrors while driving.

Caution

- Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat and steering wheel are clear of obstacles, and the rear seats are unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.
- While driving, do not operate any buttons on the memory interface on the center display to adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or side mirrors and be mindful of your safety.

When reversing the vehicle, the side mirrors can automatically tilt downward to provide a clear view of the ground. To enable this feature, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Side Mirrors > Auto-Tilt When Reversing**. After tilting down, the position of the side mirrors can be adjusted. The newly adjusted position will be automatically saved to the user's personal account (no need to set it on memory interface on the center display). When the user reverses the vehicle next time, the side mirrors will automatically tilt down to this position. When exiting R gear, the side mirrors will be adjusted to the driving position of the driver's memory interface.

Caution

When the side mirrors are automatically tilting to a saved position, if you adjust a side mirror manually, the side mirrors will stop tilting and save the new position to the corresponding account.

Driver Seat Adjustment

Adjusting the seat position via buttons

The buttons under the seat allow you to adjust the position of the driver seat.

1. **Length of seat cushion**

   Toggle the button back and forth to adjust the length of the seat cushion.

2. **Front inclination angle of seat cushion**

   To adjust the seat cushion's front inclination angle, turn this button.

3. **Lateral position of the seat**

   Toggle this button back and forth to move the seat forward or backward.

   Height of seat

   To raise or lower the seat, toggle the center portion of this button up or down.

4. **Reclining of the backrest**

   Toggle the upper end of this button back and forth to adjust the reclining of the seat backrest.

5. **Lumbar support adjustment**

   Press and hold the up, down, left, or right button to adjust the lumbar support.

   Customizable comfort button

   Press the middle button to turn on or off the comfort feature; press+hold the middle button to save the seat's current comfort options.

Caution

- The default feature of the customizable comfort button is massage or back relax.
- Press+hold the customizable comfort button to memorize the comfort feature the seat is running including type, level and mode.
- The comfort customization button can be used to memorize 2 comfort features, but mutually exclusive comfort features cannot be memorized at the same time, such as heating and ventilation features, massage and relief features. If there is a heating feature for your steering wheel, it can also be memorized by the comfort customization button.

- If a comfort feature is running, press the customizable comfort button to turn it off.

Adjusting the seat position via buttons

The buttons under the seat allow you to adjust the position of the driver seat.

1. **Front inclination angle of seat cushion**

   To adjust the seat cushion's front inclination angle, turn this button.

2. **Lateral position of the seat**

   Toggle this button back and forth to move the seat forward or backward.

   Height of seat

   To raise or lower the seat, toggle the center portion of this button up or down.

3. **Reclining of the backrest**

   Toggle the upper end of this button back and forth to adjust the reclining of the seat backrest.

4. **Lumbar support adjustment**

   Press and hold the up, down, left, or right button to adjust the lumbar support.

   Customizable comfort button

   Press the middle button to turn on or off the comfort feature; press+hold the middle button to save the seat's current comfort options.

Caution

- The default feature of the customizable comfort button is massage or back relax.
- Press+hold the customizable comfort button to memorize the comfort feature the seat is running including type, level and mode.
- The comfort customization button can be used to memorize 2 comfort features, but mutually exclusive comfort features cannot be memorized at the same time, such as heating and ventilation features, massage and relief features. If there is a heating feature for your steering wheel, it can also be memorized by the comfort customization button.
- If a comfort feature is running, press the customizable comfort button to turn it off.

Warning

- Make sure there is a safe space around the seat and any rear children, passengers, pets, etc., before you make any adjustments to the seat (i.e. move the seat forward/backward, adjust the seat’s height or backrest, etc.). Avoid the risk of crushing and bumping rear children, passengers, pets, etc.
- Before adjusting your seat (forward and backward, height, backrest, leg rest, etc.), please ensure that there is a sufficient safety space in the surrounding environment to avoid deformation and fracture risks caused by compression and collision with surrounding components (foot rest, leg rest, seat cup holder, armrest, etc.) during the seat adjustment process.
- Adjust the driver's seat position, headrest, etc. while your vehicle is parked. While the vehicle is in motion, adjustments to the seat or other parts of the vehicle can pose safety risks.
- During the seat adjustment process (moving it forward or backward, adjusting the seat’s height or backrest, etc.), avoid putting hands or other body parts in the seat's range of motion to prevent potential pinching or collision.
- After seat position adjustment, please ensure the seat is locked.
- Ensure that children do not make any adjustments to the seats, as doing so may result in a risk of being pinched.
- With Easy Entry on, make sure there is sufficient safe space in both the front and rear rows for children, passengers, and pets. Take precautions to avoid crushing or bumping when adjusting the seat.
- Please wait until Easy Entry has been completed before starting the vehicle. Performing any operation at this time may lead to the loss of vehicle control and cause an accident.
- It is recommended to turn off Easy Entry if children frequently occupy the back row.
- Before starting your vehicle, please ensure that your seat is adjusted to its recommended position (refer to the recommended sitting posture and seat position in the User Manual).

Controlling the movement of the seat on the center display

You can control the movement of the driver's seat on the center display.

On the driver's seat control interface of the center display, tap the "Position", "Backrest" and "Cushion" control arrows to adjust the position of the driver's seat, the reclining of the backrest and the position of the seat cushion respectively.

The center display provides five position options: driving position, rest position, exit position, other position, alternate position and reclining position. Every position needs to be set up by you, with the exception of the reclining position.

How to set up a memory position:

Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Position Adjustment > Seat > Driver** to set up the position of the driver's seat on this interface.

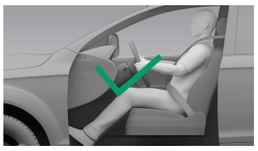
You can adjust the seat position through the seat buttons or on the center display to set up personalized positions in different scenes by pressing the **Drive/Alternate/Rest/Exit** button on the interface, and the settings will be saved under the corresponding user account. When you need to update a set position, adjust the seat and re-save.

Correcting sitting posture of the driver

To minimize potential risks and protect your safety, please adjust the seat as follows:

- Move the seat back and forth into a position where you can easily floor the accelerator and brake pedals.
- Adjust the seat backrest to a suitable straight-back sitting posture where your back completely fits the backrest, and the backrest does not recline too much.
- Adjust the height of the seat to an appropriate position where you can comfortably put both hands on the steering wheel.

- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is at least 25cm of distance between your chest and the steering wheel.
- Lay the middle part of the seat belt between your neck and shoulder. Fit the lap section of the seat belt tightly across your hip joints, not across your abdomen.



Warning

1. Do not use various types of seat covers on the seats or modify the upholstery by yourself. In the event of a collision, the seat covers or the modified upholstery can seriously limit the deployment of seat side airbags. The protection of occupants will be greatly reduced and the risk of injury will be increased.
2. Do not place objects under seats. Otherwise, safety risks may occur during the seat adjustment process or in the event of a collision, rapid acceleration and deceleration.
3. Do not hang other objects (such as clothes hangers) on seats or headrests. Otherwise, the risk of injury may be increased in the event of a vehicle collision or sudden acceleration and deceleration.
4. Only one person can ride in one seat position while the vehicle is being driven. Please do not let an infant or a child share the same seat and seat belt with an adult. Please do not let an infant or a child sit on an adult's lap. Otherwise, safety risks can occur in the event of collision, rapid acceleration and deceleration, resulting in injuries to passengers, infants, children, etc.
5. If the seat backrest is excessively tilted during driving, serious injury may occur in the event of a collision accident. Please refer to the recommended correct seat positions.
6. People with limited pain perception due to disease or age shall use the temperature control system and seat heating function with caution to prevent potential low-temperature burns caused by long-term use.

Front Passenger Seat Adjustment

Adjusting the seat position via buttons

The buttons under the seat allow passengers to adjust the position of the front passenger seat.

1. **Length of seat cushion**

   Toggle the button back and forth to adjust the length of the seat cushion.

2. **Front inclination angle of seat cushion**

   To adjust the seat cushion's front inclination angle, turn this button.

3. **Lateral position of the seat**

   Toggle this button back and forth to move the seat forward or backward.

   Height of seat

   To raise or lower the seat, toggle the center portion of this button up or down.

4. **Reclining of the backrest**

   Toggle the upper end of this button back and forth to adjust the reclining of the seat backrest.

5. **Lumbar support adjustment**

   Press and hold the up, down, left, or right button to adjust the lumbar support.

   Customizable comfort button

   Press the middle button to turn on or off the comfort feature; press+hold the middle button to save the seat's current comfort options.

Caution

1. The default feature of the customizable comfort button is massage or back relax.
2. Press+hold the customizable comfort button to memorize the comfort feature the seat is running including type, level and mode.
3. The comfort customization button can be used to memorize 2 comfort features, but mutually exclusive comfort features cannot be memorized at the same time, such as heating and ventilation features, massage and relief features.
4. If a comfort feature is running, press the customizable comfort button to turn it off.

Adjusting the seat position via buttons

The buttons under the seat allow passengers to adjust the position of the front passenger seat.

1. **Front inclination angle of seat cushion**

   To adjust the seat cushion's front inclination angle, turn this button.

2. **Lateral position of the seat**

   Toggle this button back and forth to move the seat forward or backward.

   Height of seat

   Toggle the middle part of this button up or down to move the seat upward or downward.

3. **Reclining of the backrest**

   Toggle the upper end of this button back and forth to adjust the reclining of the seat backrest.

4. **Lumbar support adjustment**

   Press and hold the up, down, left, or right button to adjust the lumbar support.

   Customizable comfort button

   Press the middle button to turn on or off the comfort feature; press+hold the middle button to save the seat's current comfort options.

Caution

1. The default feature of the customizable comfort button is massage or back relax.
2. Press+hold the customizable comfort button to memorize the comfort feature the seat is running including type, level and mode.
3. The comfort customization button can be used to memorize 2 comfort features, but mutually exclusive comfort features cannot be memorized at the same time, such as heating and ventilation features, massage and relief features.
4. If a comfort feature is running, press the customizable comfort button to turn it off.

Warning

- Before seat adjustment (forward and backward, height, backrest, etc.), make sure that there is sufficient safe space for the seat and children, occupants, and pets in the rear row to avoid squeezing or smacking into children, occupants, and pets in the rear row.
- Adjust the passenger seat position and headrest when the vehicle is in PARK. Seat position and other adjustments while driving may cause safety risks.
- During seat adjustment (forward and backward, height, backrest, etc.), avoid putting your hands or other parts of the body on the seat movement path to prevent pinching and colliding.
- Ensure that the seat is locked after position adjustment.
- Children should not adjust the seat for there is a risk of being caught.
- When Easy Entry is turned on, make sure that there is enough safe space for children, occupants, and pets in the front and rear rows to prevent the seat from squeezing or smacking into them when moving.
- Do not start the vehicle until the Easy Entry feature is finished safely. Any operation before that may cause the vehicle to lose control and cause accidents.
- It is recommended to turn off Easy Entry if there are often children passengers in the rear row.

Controlling the movement of the seat on the center display

You can control the movement of the front passenger seat on the center display.

On the front passenger seat control interface of the center display, tap the "Position", "Backrest" and "Cushion" control arrows to adjust the position of the front passenger seat, the reclining of the backrest and the position of the seat cushion respectively.

The center display provides four position options: the default position, regular position, rest position and alternate position. Among which the default position cannot be changed, and the regular position, rest position and alternate position need to be set up by you.

How to set up a memory position:

Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Position Adjustment > Seat > Front Passenger** to set up the position of the front passenger seat on this interface.

You can adjust the seat position through the seat buttons or on the center display to set up personalized positions in different scenes by pressing the **Regular/Rest/Alternate** button on the interface, and the settings will be saved under the corresponding user account. When you need to update a set position, adjust the seat and re-save.

Correcting sitting posture of front passenger

To minimize potential risks and protect your safety, please adjust the seat as follows:

- Move the seat back and forth into a position where you can place both feet in the footwell in front of the seat.
- Adjust the seat backrest to a suitable straight-back sitting posture where your back completely fits the backrest, and the backrest does not recline too much.
- Lay the middle part of the seat belt between your neck and shoulder. Fit the lap section of the seat belt tightly across your hip joints, not across your abdomen.

Warning

1. Do not use various types of seat covers on the seats or modify the upholstery by yourself. In the event of a collision, the seat covers or the modified upholstery can seriously limit the deployment of seat side airbags. The protection of occupants will be greatly reduced and the risk of injury will be increased.
2. Do not place objects under seats. Otherwise, safety risks may occur during the seat adjustment process or in the event of a collision, rapid acceleration and deceleration.
3. Do not hang other objects (such as clothes hangers) on seats or headrests. Otherwise, the risk of injury may be increased in the event of a vehicle collision or sudden acceleration and deceleration.
4. Only one person can ride in one seat position while the vehicle is being driven. Please do not let an infant or a child share the same seat and seat belt with an adult. Please do not let an infant or a child sit on an adult's lap. Otherwise, safety risks can occur in the event of collision, rapid acceleration and deceleration, resulting in injuries to passengers, infants, children, etc.
5. If the seat backrest is excessively tilted during driving, serious injury may occur in the event of a collision accident. Please refer to the recommended correct seat positions.
6. People with limited pain perception due to disease or age shall use the temperature control system and seat heating function with caution to prevent potential low-temperature burns caused by long-term use.

Warning

The behaviors shown in the following figure are not allowed, such as letting a child ride alone or holding a child in the front passenger seat:

Seat Headrest Adjustment

Press the right button under the headrest to move the headrest up and down. Move the headrest to a set position when you hear click. This indicates the headrest is fixed in this position.

Warning

- To provide the best protection, make sure the headrest is set to an appropriate height according to the occupant's height.
- Do not use the headrest when it is at its lowest position. To use it, pull the headrest upwards and ensure it is locked into place.
- Adjust the seat headrest, and make sure that the headrest center and the occupant's eyes are on the same level.
- When the headrest is removed, do not drive the vehicle. In case of collision, sudden acceleration or deceleration, seats without headrests may not provide sufficient protection to the head, leading to serious consequences.

Rear Seat Adjustment

Pull the mechanical handle of the seat backrest to unlock the backrest and then push the backrest forward to recline the seat backrest.

Warning

- When folding down the backrest of a rear seat, ensure that no objects are on the seat and its seat belt is not fastened. Failure to do so may result in damage to the third row seats.
- Ensure that the seat is locked before you start the vehicle (forward and backward, height, backrest, etc.). Otherwise, it may pose a potential risk of personal injury. (For example, if the rear seats are not fully locked after their backrests have been unfolded, it may increase the risk of personal injury in case of accidents or sudden acceleration or deceleration.)
- Do not sit on folded seats (for example, rear seats that are folded down) when the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, it may pose a risk of personal injury or death in case of collision and sudden acceleration or deceleration.
- When adjusting a rear seat backrest, ensure that the seat belt is not twisted or stuck in the backrest. Otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged and therefore pose a safety risk.

Correct Sitting Posture of Rear Row Passengers

To minimize potential risks and protect your safety, please adjust the seat as follows:

- Adjust the headrest so that the center of the headrest is flush with your eyes.
- Place your feet in the footstep space in front of the rear seats.
- Place the middle part of the seat belt between your neck and shoulder, and tightly wrap the lap part of the seat belt around your hip joint (not your abdomen).
- When driving with children in your vehicle, use appropriate child safety seats to protect children. See the chapter on child safety seats for details.

Warning

- Do not hang other objects (such as clothes hangers) on seats or headrests. Otherwise, the risk of injury may be increased in the event of a vehicle collision or sudden acceleration and deceleration.

- Only one person can ride in one seat position while the vehicle is being driven. Please do not let an infant or a child share the same seat and seat belt with an adult. Please do not let an infant or a child sit on an adult's lap. Otherwise, safety risks can occur in the event of collision, rapid acceleration and deceleration, resulting in injuries to passengers, infants, children, etc.
- People with limited pain perception due to disease or age shall use the temperature control system and seat heating function with caution to prevent potential low-temperature burns caused by long-term use.

Warning

Rear seat passengers shall not behave in the following ways:

Massage

The front seats have a lower back massage feature, which is turned off by default. Enter the Comfort Panel interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap the **Seats > Massage** and select the desired massage mode (mode 1, mode 2, mode 3, mode 4, mode 5) and massage intensity (level 1, level 2).

- Mode 1: Gentle
- Mode 2: Rolling
- Mode 3: Dynamic
- Mode 4: Lower Back
- Mode 5: Upper Back
- Level 1: Weak
- Level 2: Strong

The massage will automatically turn off if the massage mode is not switched within 20 minutes.

Caution

If a passenger leaves his/her seat for more than 30 seconds during the operation of this feature, this feature will be turned off.

Heat

The front and rear seats have a heating feature, which is turned off by default. Enter the Comfort Panel interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Seats > Heat** to turn on the heating feature for the corresponding seat and select the level. There are three levels of heating, which will heat the seat up to the preset level within 10 minutes and remain at this temperature.

The front seats have a heating feature, which is turned off by default. Enter the Comfort Panel interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Seats > Heat** to turn on the heating feature for the corresponding seat and select the level. There are three levels of heating, which will heat the seat up to the preset level within 10 minutes and remain at this temperature.

Smart Seat Heating: This feature is turned off by default. After the feature is turned on, when the ambient temperature is below 12°C and the interior temperature is below 10°C, the heating feature will be automatically turned on; the lower the ambient temperature, the longer the heating time.

Note

- With this feature on, the current level will be saved and the feature will turn off when the passenger leaves the seat for over 30 seconds;
- If someone is seated within 15 minutes after the passenger leaves, the feature will resume the previously saved level; If no one is seated within 15 minutes, the feature will stay off;
- Individuals with limited pain perception due to illness, ages, or other conditions should use the temperature control system and seat heating carefully to avoid potential low-temperature burns due to prolonged use.

Ventilate

The front seats have a ventilate feature, which is turned off by default. Enter the Comfort Panel interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Seats > Ventilate** to turn on the Ventilate feature for the corresponding seat. There are three levels of ventilation available.

Note

- With this feature on, the current level will be saved and the feature will turn off when the passenger leaves the seat for over 30 seconds;
- If someone is seated within 15 minutes after the passenger leaves, the feature will resume the previously saved level; If no one is seated within 15 minutes, the feature will stay off.

Relax

The front seats have lower back relax feature. You can go to the Comfort Panel interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Seats > Relax**, and select your desired relax mode.

- Mode 1: Upper back relax
- Mode 2: Middle back relax
- Mode 3: Lower back relax
- Mode 4: Circular relax from upper to lower back

After each mode is enabled, it will run 20 minutes as a cycle, and automatically stop after 20 minutes.

Caution

If a passenger leaves his/her seat for more than 30 seconds during the operation of this feature, this feature will be turned off.

Front Storage

The vehicle provides you with a number of convenient storage spaces that can be used to store daily necessities.

Warning

Never place flammable and combustible objects or liquids with a high risk of splashing in the storage area. Always close the cover after placing objects in the storage area.

Door Storage

There is a storage space at the lower part of each door, which can be used for storing items, and is equipped with door storage lighting for illumination at night, when the light is dim or when the position lights are turned on.

Caution

- Do not place over-sized or sharp items in the lower storage place of the door panel to prevent damage to the structure and surface of the door panel.
- Due to the special texture of the door panel design, please wipe the surface of the door panel regularly.

Cup Holder

There are two cup holders on the central armrest, which can be used for drinks.

Warning

- Do not put any hot beverages in an open container. A spill can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not place any fragile items, or they may cause injury when broken.

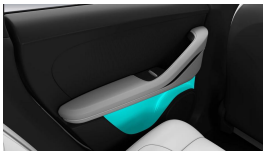
Center Console Open Storage

The open storage space under the center console can be used for temporary storage of some non-important items, and there is a 12V power supply at the rear that can be used to charge the passenger's electronic devices.

Rear Storage

Rear Doors

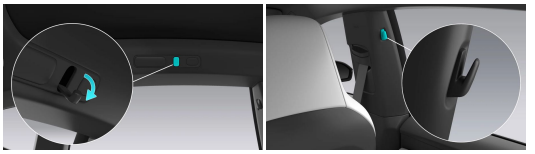
There are convenient storage spaces beside the rear seats. There is a storage space on both rear doors, which can be used for drinks or items, and is equipped with door storage lighting for illumination at night, when the light is dim or when the position lights are turned on.



Caution

- Do not place over-sized or sharp items in the lower storage place of the door panel to prevent damage to the structure and surface of the door panel.
- Due to the special texture of the door panel design, please wipe the surface of the door panel regularly.

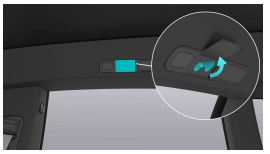
There are also coat hooks beside both rear doors, which can be used to neatly store clothes.



Warning

Please do not hang any hard objects (such as hangers, fruits, glass bottles) on the hat-and-coat hook near the door to prevent accidental injury.

There are cargo barrier net installation slots on both sides of the rear ceiling. When loading items in the rear trunk or with the second row backrest folded down, the cargo barrier net can be installed to prevent the items from impacting the front passengers due to unexpected situations such as sudden braking or collision of your vehicle.



Rear Central Armrest

When the rear middle seat is not occupied, you can flip open the central armrest on the backrest to expose the cup holders.

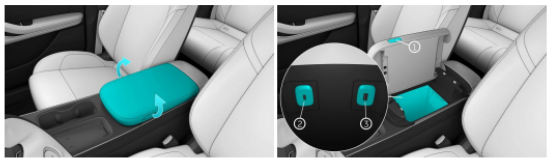
Warning

- Never place flammable and combustible objects or liquids with a high risk of splashing in the storage area. Always close the cover after placing objects in the storage area.
- Do not place any heavy, sharp, or fragile objects on the armrest when driving. In case of collision, sudden acceleration, or deceleration, these objects may fly out, adding to the risk of injury.

Safety Storage Box

Storage Box Mode

The safety storage box is in the Storage Box Mode by default. In this mode, the safety storage box is not locked, and its flip cover can be opened through the buttons on the left and right sides of the central armrest:



1. Storage box buttons

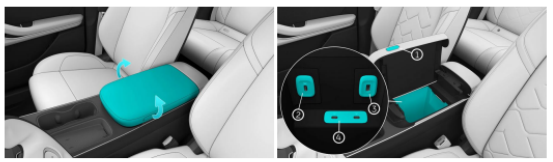
   Press the button to open the flip cover. It can be used to store mobile phones, tissues and other items (one button on each side).

2. Storage box USB Type C port (60W)

   High-speed transmission port for charging mobile devices, not supporting data transmission.

3. Storage box USB Type A port (2.5W)

   Ordinary transmission port for data transmission such as USB media audio source, Digital Video Recorder (DVR) video export, microphone access, etc.



1. Storage box buttons

   Press the button to open the flip cover. It can be used to store mobile phones, tissues and other items (both left and right buttons can open the cover).

2. Storage box USB Type C port (60W)

   High-speed transmission port for charging mobile devices, not supporting data transmission.

3. Storage box USB Type A port (2.5W)

   Ordinary transmission port for data transmission such as USB media audio source, Digital Video Recorder (DVR) video export, microphone access, etc.

4. Storage box USB Type C port (60W)

   High-speed transmission port for connecting AR glasses and charging mobile devices, not supporting data transmission.

Safe Box Mode

Swipe right on the main interface of the center display to enter the Quick Access interface, and tap **Safe Box**. When the Safe Mode is turned on for the first time, a pop-up window for setting the password will pop up on the center display, and you need to set a password to finish setting up Safe Box Mode.

Once set, you need to enter the password on the center display to unlock the safety storage box, then you can open the flip cover through the buttons on both sides of the central armrest.

Mode Switch

To switch between the two modes of the safety storage box: enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Security > ARMREST BOX** to switch between Storage Box Mode and Safe Box Mode.

Storage Box Mode > Safe Box Mode:

- Add Safe Box interface
- Set a password

Safe Box Mode > Storage Box Mode:

- Risk prompt
- Safe Box Settings interface disappears (turns gray)

Rear Trunk

When the liftgate is opened, you can load items in the storage space of the rear trunk.

Caution

When storing liquids in the vehicle, ensure that the container is sealed. Spills or leakages may damage the vehicle. If a spill or leakage occurs, please clean up the liquid as soon as possible.

Rear Trunk Hook

Two strap hooks are equipped on two sides of the rear trunk for hanging items such as handbags.

The strap hooks bear a maximum hanging weight of 3 kg.

Two hooks are installed on two sides of the rear trunk door for hanging camping lights and other items for static scenes.

The hooks bear a maximum hanging weight of 2 kg.

Rear Trunk 12V Power Supply

The 12V power supply is located at the left side of the rear trunk, which can supply power to external devices as needed.

Hitched Trailer

Towing Accessory

The vehicle towing kit is a spherical coupling with the national standard ECR R55, which can support towing accessories (such as trailer, caravan, bicycle).

The spherical coupling is designed to support a vertical load of up to 75 kg. When carrying bicycles or other items in the towing device, always check to ensure that the maximum weight is not exceeded. When calculating the weight, please remember to include the weight of the accessory bracket. For example, if the weight of the carrier is 14 kg, it is sufficient to carry two bicycles with a weight of about 20 kg each or four bicycles with a weight of about 10 kg each for the weight threshold.

Caution

- The vehicle towing device is designed to bear a maximum weight of 75 kg. Exceeding this maximum weight may cause serious damage to the device.
- Do not attempt to install an accessory carrier on the vehicle without a towing kit. Otherwise, significant damage may be incurred.

Towing a trailer and carrying accessories will increase the weight and resistance of the vehicle, so the driving range may be significantly reduced with a trailer. Although the vehicle range calculator tries to adjust the range estimate according to the Trailer Mode, the actual energy consumption may vary. You need to plan your travel distance and destination reasonably.

To install and use the accessory bracket, the towing device must be connected. Then follow the instructions provided with the accessory bracket. You need to comply with all regulations and legal requirements applicable to carrying accessories. The vehicle towing kit includes the wiring of the lights required for the accessory bracket.

When towing accessories, verify regularly that the accessory bracket and its goods are always in a safe state, and also verify that the lights on the accessories work properly (if any).

Note

It is recommended that you purchase your vehicle accessories from the NIO website. Please purchase third-party products compliant with national standards if necessary. NIO recommends and supports products approved by NIO. Before installing any non-NIO accessory, please review the product information to ensure compatibility.

Caution

The tow device may obscure the view of the side mirrors, rear cameras, and/or rear ultrasonic sensors. In addition, some PILOT features may not function properly.

Towing Capacity

The total weight of the trailer (including all goods and additional equipment) and the carrying capacity of the tow hitch shall not exceed the following values:

Tire	Maximum towing capacity	Maximum tow hitch carrying capacity
19", 20"	1,400 kg	75 kg

The tow hitch carrying weight is the downward force exerted by the trailer weight on the tow hitch. It shall not be less than 4% of the trailer load. Loading a large number of equipment, passengers or goods in the trailer can reduce the towing weight that it can bear, which will also reduce the maximum towing capacity. Assuming that the trailer load does not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), the maximum towing capacity can be calculated. GVWR is printed on the vehicle nameplate.

If you drive a tractor with a C6 driver's license, you must ensure that the total mass, including the mass of the tractor and trailer, is less than (not including) 4,500 kg.

Tire Pressure During Towing

The tire pressure must be adjusted to adapt to the additional load for towing. Keep the tire inflated to 290 kPa. The maximum permitted uphill slope is 12% for towing.

Note

When towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle shall not exceed 15%, and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle shall not exceed 75 kg. In these situations, the vehicle speed shall not exceed 100 km/h, and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa higher than the normally recommended tire pressure.

Warning

Never attempt to tow a vehicle when it has a faulty tire. Temporarily repaired tires cannot withstand the towing load. Towing with faulty or temporarily repaired tires may result in tire fault and vehicle unstability.

Operations Before Towing

Before towing, the following operations must be performed:

- Inflate the tire to the specified cold tire inflation pressure for towing.
- Make sure you understand and comply with all local regulations and legal requirements for towing.
- Adjust the rearview mirror to provide a clear view behind you that avoids obvious blind spots.
- Enable Trailer Mode in the center display.

Confirm the following:

- The tractor driver must hold a C6 driver's license.
- The vehicle needs to be level when connecting to the towing device. If the front of the vehicle is tilted upward and the rear is tilted downwards, please confirm that the maximum towing capacity and tow hitch carrying weight provided in the "Towing Capacity" table are not exceeded.
- All towing device components, accessories, and electrical connectors (if any) are in good condition, and are connected correctly. Do not tow if there are any obvious problems.
- The trailer lights (brake lights, turn signal lights and marker lights) work properly.
- The towing tongue is firmly connected to the towing ball.
- All items inside the vehicle are secure in place.
- You may use wheel chocks.
- The towing load is evenly distributed so that the weight on the towing tongue is about 4% of the total towing weight and does not exceed the maximum bearing weight of the towing tongue provided in the "Towing Capacity" table.

Warning

- The weight of the trailer tongue must be approximately 4% of the gross trailer weight and not exceed the maximum trailer tongue load provided in the Towing Capacity table. An unbalanced load on the wheels or a heavier load on the rear may cause the trailer to sway, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Please always ensure that the load is secured in the trailer and does not move. An moving load can cause loss of vehicle control, resulting in serious injury or death.

Trailer Mode

Before towing, please shift to the P gear, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Tow Hitch**. This will extend the tow hitch. When a trailer is towed, Trailer Mode must always be active. When you connect the trailer's electrical harness, the vehicle will enable Trailer Mode after you confirm. Trailer Mode is deactivated when the trailer's electrical harness is disconnected. To manually enable or exit Trailer Mode, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving and Parking > Trailer Mode**. One of the following indicators is displayed on the instrument panel at this time:

Icon	Description
	The vehicle has detected the connection of the trailer lights, but Trailer Mode is not activated. The vehicle may already have an accessory connected.
	The vehicle has detected an electrical connection fault with the trailer lights. Some or all of the trailer lights may be faulty. To ensure your safety, pull over as soon as possible and check the wiring or connection of the trailer lights for faults. If the problem has been resolved but the red icon is still on, please try turning off Trailer Mode and then turning it on again.

Warning

- Before towing, be sure to check that the Tow Mode is on.
- Under no circumstances should the Tow Mode be exited during the towing process. Doing so may result in serious injury and/or death.
- Do not use the ride height adjustment setting on the center display to properly match the height of the towing device to the height of the trailer.

Note

- Some PILOT features (Steering Assist, Active Lane Change, etc.) as well as kick sensors, easy entry, and ultrasonic sensors may not be available in the Trailer Mode.

- Please connect your vehicle to a trailer under the normal ride height. If you enter the Trailer Mode under an abnormal ride height, the ride height will be automatically adjusted to normal.

Instructions for Towing

Your vehicle is mainly designed as a passenger vehicle. Towing a trailer puts an additional load on the vehicle's motor, transmission, brakes, tires and suspension and significantly reduces its range. If you decide to tow a trailer, please drive carefully and follow the following guidelines:

- Reduce your driving speed and avoid sudden maneuvers. When a trailer is towed, the steering, stability, turning radius, stopping distance and braking performance are different from those without a trailer.
- Keep at least twice the distance from the vehicle in front of you as when you are not pulling a trailer. This helps to avoid situations requiring emergency braking. Sudden braking may cause skidding or bottoming out and loss of control.
- Avoid sharp turns, which may cause the trailer to contact the vehicle and cause damage. Since the wheels of the trailer are closer to the inside of the turn than the wheels of the vehicle, the turn radius must be larger to prevent the trailer from hitting the curb, road signs, trees or other objects.
- Check the trailer lights and turn lights regularly to verify that they continue to work properly.
- Verify regularly that any items inside the vehicle are safe.
- Verify regularly that the trailer brake works properly.
- Avoid parking on a slope.
- Verify regularly that all towing parts have been firmly tightened.
- When a trailer is hitched, the LED taillight of the trailer may flash very slightly, which is normal.
- People are not allowed to ride in the trailer during towing.
- Place weight in the trailer near the axle as much as possible to reduce interference to the train set when swinging.

Trailer Parking

It is recommended not to park your vehicle on slopes with gradients exceeding 12%. If you have to park the vehicle on a slope, please place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels:

- One person depresses and holds the brake pedal;
- Another person places wheel chocks under the wheels on the downhill side;
- When the chocks are in place, release the brake pedal and ensure that the chocks can bear the weight of the vehicle and trailer (do not activate Autohold).
- Put the vehicle into the P gear and engage the parking brake.

Warning

If it is necessary to park on a slope, please always ensure that all trailer wheels are securely fastened with wedges, as failure to do so may result in serious damage, injury or death.

Electrical Connection

All trailers are equipped with taillights, brake lights, side indicators and turn lights. In order to provide power for the trailer lighting, the towing device is equipped with a built-in 13-pin electrical connector. Inserting the trailer plug into the vehicle electrical connector will enable Trailer Mode after you confirm.

1. Left turn light (yellow)
2. Right fog light (blue)

3. Pin 1-8 grounding (white)
4. Right turn light (green)
5. Right taillight (brown)
6. Brake light (red)
7. Left taillight (black)
8. Reverse light (pink)
9. No output for now (orange)
10. 12V power output when the vehicle is awakened (gray)
11. Pin 10 grounding (black and white)
12. Reserved interface (light gray)
13. Pin 9 grounding (red and white)

Warning

Please use only the electrical plugs designed by NIO. Do not attempt to directly splice the cables or connect the trailer's cable by any other method, as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system and cause fault.

Caution

- Before and during towing, you need to manually check and ensure that all electrical connections are working properly and all trailer lights are working correctly.
- Trailer light failure during towing may be the result of a blown fuse. If the fuse is blown, there will be no warning from your vehicle. Please contact the NIO Service Center.
- Make sure that the trailer cable does not touch or drag on the ground during towing, and that the cable has enough slack to allow for turns.

Start Adjustment

Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Position Adjustment > Steering Wheel > Start Adjustment**, and then adjust the position through the buttons on the right side of the steering wheel, and tap **End Adjustment** after the adjustment is completed; or swipe right on the main interface of the center display to enter the Quick Access interface, and tap **Steering Wheel Adjustment > Start Adjustment** to adjust the position of the steering wheel.

Adjusting the position of the steering wheel using the buttons on the right side of the steering wheel:

Up: move the steering wheel upward

Down: move the steering wheel downward

Left: move the steering wheel further from the driver

Right: move the steering wheel closer to the driver

Press: move once

Press+hold: move continuously

Note

When the pop-up window is manually closed by the driver or passively closed due to factors such as conflicts, the right steering wheel controls will exit the steering wheel adjustment mode and resumes regular controls instead, such as answering phone calls, and increasing/decreasing volume.

Warning

- Do not adjust the steering wheel position while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.
- An improper steering wheel position or seating position may result in injury. Make sure your chest is at least 25 centimeters from the steering wheel.

Control via Right Steering Wheel Buttons

The buttons on the right side of the steering wheel can be used to adjust steering wheel position, right side mirror, sound volume, etc.

Start Adjustment

Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Steering Wheel > Start Adjusting** to adjust the position through the buttons on the right side of the steering wheel. See **Start Adjustment**.

Adjusting the Right Side Mirror

Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Rearview Mirrors > Start Adjusting** to adjust the position of the right side mirror through the buttons on the right side of the steering wheel. See **Side Mirrors Position Adjustment**.

Volume Adjustment

In scenarios such as answering calls, talking with NOMI, and playing multimedia, press the Up or Down button to adjust the volume, and press+hold the Down button to mute the sound.

In other scenarios where there is no need for volume adjusting, holding the Up button gives no response, and press+hold the Down button to mute the sound.

In the mute state, press the Up button to unmute.

Triggering the Custom Feature

Press+hold the Middle button on the right side of the steering wheel to trigger the custom feature. The default triggered feature is NOMI, and you can change the custom feature on the Settings interface by tapping **Position Adjustment > Steering Wheel > Steering Wheel Customized Keys**.

Control within an Immediate Task

When the incoming call reminder is displayed, you can answer or reject the call through the Left and Right buttons, and the Middle button is for confirming the selection.

Switching the Normal Menu

Press+hold the Left or Right button to enter the “Switching Mode”, in which you can press the Left or Right button to switch the order of the menus.

After pressing the Middle button, or after 3 seconds with no operation on the Left or Right button, the current menu will be selected automatically and the Switching Mode will be exited.

Controls within the Menu

When the instrument cluster shows the Media/Third-party Software, Estimated Range, Mileage, and Power Consumption menus, press the Left, Middle and Right buttons on the right side of the steering wheel to switch the media/third-party software type.

When the Media/Third-party Software menu is for Media: Left - previous track; Right - next track; Middle - play/pause

When the Media/Third-party Software menu is for Karaoke: Left - redo; Right - next track; Middle - play/pause

When the instrument cluster shows Team menu: Middle - sound record/send

Control via Left Steering Wheel Buttons

The buttons on the left side of the steering wheel can be used to adjust the Left Side Mirror and control the Driver Assistance feature.

Adjusting the Left Side Mirror

Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Rearview Mirrors > Start Adjusting** to adjust the position of the left side mirror through the buttons on the left side of the steering wheel. See **Side Mirrors Position Adjustment**.

Adjusting the Driver assistance control

Middle button: activate or exit driver assistance

Up button: increase the cruising speed

Down button: decrease the cruising speed

Right button: increase the following distance

Left button: decrease the following distance

Press the Up or Down button: increase/decrease the cruise speed by 5 km/h; press+hold the Up or Down button: increase/decrease the cruise speed by 1 km/h continuously

Press the Left or Right button: increase/decrease the following distance by 1 level; where Level 1 is the closest, and Level 5 is the farthest

Steering Wheel Heating

In cold weather, you can turn on the steering wheel heating feature by going to the Comfort Panel interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tapping **Seats > Heating > Steering Wheel Heating**. The steering wheel will be gradually heated to a comfortable temperature within about 10 minutes and will maintain this temperature.

Smart Steering Wheel Heating: When the feature is enabled, the steering wheel heating will be turned on automatically when the ambient temperature falls below 12°C and the interior temperature falls below 10°C; the lower the temperature, the longer the heating period.

Double-button Restart of Steering Wheel

If the center display shows some abnormalities, such as screen stuttering or unresponsive screen, try resolving by quickly restarting the vehicle system.

Instructions for Double-button Restart:

1. Turn on the hazard warning lights;
2. Park your vehicle in a safe area and put into P gear;
3. Press and hold the Right button on the left side of the steering wheel and the Down button on the right side at the same time for about 8 seconds;
4. After about 30 seconds, all screens will light up and the system can resume operation.

If the system has not returned to normal, please contact the NIO Service Center as soon as possible.

Caution

- The vehicle must be in PARK to use Dual-Button Restart. Please ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe area;
- It is strictly forbidden to perform Dual-Button Restart while the vehicle is moving;
- Keep the hazard warning light on while the vehicle is in the system restart process;
- Do not perform Dual-Button Restart when the vehicle software is being upgraded;
- During the restart process, the vehicle status display, safety warning, surround view image, map interface, and other information cannot be seen;
- If the screen fails to resume normal operation after Dual-Button Restart, you can try to lock the vehicle and put the vehicle to sleep. If the problem persists, please contact NIO.

USB Port

Three USB ports are provided in your vehicle, including one Type A port and two Type C ports.

Location:

- **Safety Storage Box**

  Type A (2.5W) port: Used for exporting videos from the DVR and connecting a microphone or a USB speaker;

  Type C (60W) port: Used for charging mobile devices;

- **Under the Rear Row Air Conditioning Vents**

  Type C (60W) port: Used for charging mobile devices;

When the optional N-BOX is installed, six USB ports are provided in your vehicle, including one Type A port and five Type C ports.

- **Safety Storage Box**

② Type C (60W) port: Used for charging mobile devices;

③ Type A (2.5W) port: Used for exporting videos from the DVR and connecting a microphone or a USB speaker;

④ Type C (60W) port: Used for connecting AR glasses and charging mobile devices;

- **Under the Rear Row Air Conditioning Vents**

Type C (60W) port: Used for connecting AR glasses and charging mobile devices;

12V Power Supply

Your vehicle is equipped with two 12V power supplies.

- Center console open storage space: located in the rear

- Rear trunk: on the left

Side Mirrors Position Adjustment

Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Position Adjustment > Side Mirrors > Start Adjustment**, and then adjust the position of the side mirrors through the steering wheel buttons, and tap **End Adjustment** after the adjustment is completed; or swipe right from left on the main interface of the center display to enter the Quick Access interface, and tap **Side Mirrors > Start Adjustment** to adjust the position of the side mirrors.

The left buttons on the steering wheel is used to adjust the left side mirror, and the right buttons on the steering wheel is used to adjust the right side mirror.

Adjustment Method:

Up and down buttons: Control the up and down rotation of the side mirrors

Left and right buttons: Control the left and right rotation of the side mirrors

Press: Rotate one level; **Press+Hold :** Continuously rotate

Warning

Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.

Fold Side Mirrors

You can set up automatic folding for the side mirrors by going to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tapping **Position Adjustment > Side Mirrors > Auto-Fold When Vehicle is Locked**.

When your vehicle is locked from the outside, the side mirrors will be folded automatically. They will extend automatically the next time the driver is seated in the driver's seat (the driver's door needs to be closed or the brake pedal needs to be pressed).

If your vehicle passes through narrow roads at low speed (the vehicle speed needs to be lower than 40 km/h), tap **Position Adjustment > Side Mirrors > Fold Side Mirrors** on the Settings interface to manually fold the side mirrors. Tap **Fold Side Mirrors** again, the side mirrors extend automatically.

When reversing, turn on the **Auto-Tilt When Reversing** feature to see the road better in order to assist in reversing.

Side Mirrors Heating

The side mirrors are equipped with a heating feature, which is used to heat the left and right side mirrors to quickly remove water or snow on rainy and snowy days.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Position Adjustment > Side Mirrors > Side Mirrors Heating** to manually turn on the heating feature of the side mirrors.

The heating feature of the side mirrors will be automatically turned off 60 minutes after it was turned on, or it can be manually turned off using the center display.

Automatic Heating of Side Mirrors and Windshield

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap on the **Position Adjustment > Rearview Mirrors** interface, and turn on the automatic heating feature of the side mirrors and rear windshield. When the front windshield wipers are turned on while driving on rainy days, the heating feature will be turned on automatically to help remove fog on the side mirrors and rear windshield.

Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors Auto-Dimming

Go to the Settings interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Position Adjustment > Side Mirrors > Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors Auto-Dimming** to turn on the Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors Auto-Dimming feature.

Rearview Mirror and Side Mirrors Auto-Dimming feature helps reduce the glare in the rearview mirror from the vehicle behind, which can improve driving safety.

Note

The auto-dimming feature is not available when your vehicle is in Reverse gear or the front reading lights are turned on.

Vehicle Climate Control

Control Bar

You can control the temperature and airflow distribution in your vehicle through the climate control bar at the bottom of the center display.

1. Home

   Tap to return to the home interface.

2. Settings

   Tap to go to the list of settings.

3. Switching Between Recirculating Air and Outside Air

   The current air flow mode is displayed. You can tap to select the following three modes in sequence: recirculation, automatic recirculation or outside air, and outside air.

   With automatic recirculation or outside air mode, if air pollution is serious, outside air will be turned off automatically and switched to recirculation to realize automatic control of air quality in the vehicle.

4. Driver Side Temperature Display

   The target temperature on the driver side is displayed. You may tap on it to enter the temperature control panel.

Swiping left or right adjusts the target temperature. The adjustment range on the driver side is 15–31 °C.

You can also press the arrow to adjust the target temperature. Each time you press the arrow, the temperature can be adjusted by 0.5 °C.

Select "SYNC" to adjust the air conditioning temperature for the front and rear passengers together with the driver side. Manually adjusting the temperature on the front passenger side or in the rear row will exit SYNC mode.

5. Air Conditioning Inlet and Air Volume Regulation

   The ON/OFF status of the air conditioning is displayed. Tap to expand or collapse the Climate Control Panel.

   Press+hold and slide to adjust the level of the front fan speed. There are eight levels, 0–8, where 0 turns off the air conditioning for the whole vehicle.h

6. Front Passenger Side Temperature Display

   The target temperature on the front passenger side is displayed. You may tap on it to enter the temperature control panel.

   Swiping left or right adjusts the target temperature. The adjustment range on the front passenger side is 15–31 °C.

   You can also press the arrow to adjust the target temperature. Each time you press the arrow, the temperature can be adjusted by 0.5 °C.

7. Front Windshield Defrosting/Defogging

   When the front windshield defrosting/defogging feature is turned on, the manual air conditioning (A/C) mode is turned on at the same time, the air distribution mode is defrosting mode, and the air circulation is switched to the automatic recirculation/outside air mode.

   If the outside of the front windshield is foggy, it is recommended to turn on the wipers and automatic climate control; if the inside of the front windshield is foggy, it is recommended to turn on defogging for the front windshield. After the fog is cleared, switch to automatic climate control and turn on auto defogging for the air conditioning.

   Go to the Air Conditioning interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap , and turn on **Auto Defogging**. Front windshield defogging will be turned on automatically when the inside of the front windshield is about to become foggy or slightly foggy.

8. Application Center

   Applications in the center display of the vehicle.

9. Volume Adjustment

   The default volume is 50%. Tap and then slide left or right to adjust the volume.

   Press+hold to mute, and press+hold again to unmute, and return to the volume before the mute state.

Climate Control Panel

To access the Climate Control Panel, tap the air conditioning button on the control bar at the bottom of the center display. You can set the air conditioning's air volume, temperature, airflow direction and other features through the climate control panel.

The air modes will be displayed while modifying the airflow direction of the air vents:

- Free: The air vent angles can be adjusted separately.
- Balanced: The air vent angles are symmetrical.
- Sweep: The air vent angles are set to sweep up and down, left and right.

Icon	Name	Feature
	Air Conditioning Main Switch	It controls the ON/OFF of the air conditioning throughout the vehicle;
	Steering Wheel Heating	It controls the heating of the steering wheel;
A/C	Cooling, Heating and Ventilation Switch	Turn on the A/C, and the whole vehicle's air conditioning cools or heats; Turn off the A/C, and the whole vehicle's air conditioning enters ventilation mode;
AC MAX	Strong Cooling	When activated, the whole vehicle's air conditioning enters maximum cooling mode;
AC MAX	Strong Heating	When activated, the whole vehicle's air conditioning enters maximum heating mode;
	Front Windshield Defrosting and Defogging	When activated, it removes fog from the interior of the front windshield;
	Rear Windshield Heating	When activated, the rear windshield begins to heat up, and the feature will be turned off automatically after 15 minutes;
26	Air Conditioning Temperature Adjustment	It adjusts the air conditioning temperature within the range of 15~31°C;
5	Air Conditioning Air Volume Adjustment	It adjusts the air conditioning air volume within the range of level 0~8;
	Window Blowing Mode	The air conditioning vents direct air to the front windshield;
	Face Blowing Mode	The air conditioning vents direct air to the upper body of the passenger;
	Foot Blowing Mode	The air conditioning vents direct air to the lower body of the passenger;
	Air Conditioning Comfort Panel Access Keys	Tap to access the Settings interface for Ionizer, Auto Defogging, AC Deodorization and other features.
Auto	Automatic Mode	In this mode, the temperature, air volume, airflow direction of the front and rear rows' air conditioning, and the recirculation/outside air mode will be adjusted automatically according to the temperature preset.
SYNC	SYNC	In SYNC mode, the cabin temperature will be the same as that of the driver's.

Front Row Air Vents and Their Adjustment

The air vents in the front row of the vehicle are located at the front windshield, the instrument panel and the leg space under the instrument panel.

1. Defrosting air vent at front windshield
2. Face blowing air vent at instrument panel
3. Foot blowing air vent under instrument panel

To adjust the air vent at the front row instrument panel, do as follows:

Press and hold the blowing area on the center display and then slide up or down to control the vertical angle, and slide left and right to control the horizontal angle.

In the free mode, double-click the air vent position in the center display to close the corresponding air vent. However, at least one air vent must be left open.

Rear Row Air Conditioning Vents and Their Adjustment

The rear row air conditioning vents are located behind the center armrest and at the bottom of the driver and front passenger seats.

1. Rear row face blowing air vents
2. Rear row foot blowing air vents

To adjust the rear row face blowing air vents, do as follows:

The air conditioning on the left and right sides is managed by two knobs on the rear row face blowing air vents.

Turn the knob up and down, left and right to adjust the airflow direction; turn the knobs to the bottom on the left and right sides respectively to close the air vents.

Tips for Using Air Conditioning

- Make sure that the vent grille of the air conditioning is not blocked by foreign objects (leaves, snow, etc.).
- If the vehicle has been parked in the hot sun, opening the windows while running the air conditioning can create convection, which helps the vehicle to cool down faster.

Air Purification

PM2.5 Air Purification

View the current air quality in your vehicle at the upper right corner of the center display, and tap to switch to the corresponding air purification mode.

- **OFF**: Turns off air purification;
- **AUTO**: Adjusts the purification airflow speed automatically according to the concentration of PM 2.5 in the passenger compartment;
- **QUIET**: Purifies the air in the passenger compartment in the low airflow speed and silent state.

Ionizer

Go to the air conditioning comfort adjustment interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Ionizer** to generate negative ions while purifying the air, thereby further improving the air comfort in the vehicle.

AC Deodorization

If the air conditioning cooling is turned on in hot weather, some condensate may remain in the climate control system when parking. Go to the air conditioning comfort adjustment interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap to enable **AC Deodorization**. When you leave and lock your vehicle, if the system detects the residual condensate in the climate control system, it will turn on the fan automatically and run it at the maximum air volume to keep the evaporator and air pipe dry, thereby reducing the risk of bacteria breeding in the humid environment.

You can select one of the two drying levels: **Standard** (the fan works for about 3 minutes continuously) and **Strong** (the fan works for about 20 minutes continuously).

This feature increases energy consumption in certain circumstances, so make sure that you plan your trip properly or turn the feature off if necessary.

Remaining Life of Air Filter

After replacing the filter element, go to the air conditioning comfort adjustment interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap , and select **Air Conditioning Purifier Filter Element Life Timer** to reset the filter element service life timer.

Note

This reminder is the estimated service life, and the actual service life may vary due to the environment and other factors. Please replace the air filter if necessary.

Music

You can go to the Media interface from the main interface of the center display to select the program for listening to music:

- Select "Tidal" to discover and listen to your favorite music. You can also use it to build a library of your preferred songs or albums.
- Insert a USB flash disk into the USB port in your vehicle to play the music in the USB flash disk.
- After a mobile device is connected to your vehicle's Bluetooth, you can select "Bluetooth Music" to play the music in the mobile device.

You can go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Sound** to set the volume for media music. Select "Sound Mode" to set the sound field effect in the passenger compartment. If necessary (for example, when a child is sleeping in the rear row), the rear mute feature can be turned on.

example, when a child is sleeping in the rear row), the rear mute feature can be turned on.

Dolby Atmos provides a finely tuned, balanced audio experience with an optimal music listening configuration for the vehicle's interior environment. As a result, the vehicle becomes an ideal immersive space for enjoying music, which sounds more layered and richer than ever before. This product is manufactured under the license of Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Atmos and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. This is an unpublished product. © 2012-2021 Dolby Laboratories, Inc. All rights reserved.

Navigation

You can select your navigation route on the navigation interface from the main page of the center display. If you have previously sent a navigation route through your mobile app, the selected navigation route will be displayed automatically when the center display is turned on.

Tap to set navigation options, such as route preference, navigation voice broadcast, and map display mode.

Photos

Photographing

NOMI can capture your selfies inside the car upon request. The center display's **Photos** application is where videos or photos are stored. To transfer them, use a USB cable.

Photos

You can access **Photos** in the application center on the center display and see all the photos in it. You can select the ones to be exported or deleted. There are various categories of photos: All/Digital Video Recorder (DVR)/Smart Guardian/Quick Video Recording/Selfie/Screenshot, and more.

Phone

When your mobile phone's Bluetooth is successfully paired with your vehicle's Bluetooth, the on-board Bluetooth phone feature can be used after your vehicle is authorized on your mobile phone to synchronize your mobile phone contacts and recent calls. You can see the Phone interface on the main interface or on the application center in the center display.

When your contacts and recent calls in your mobile phone are synchronized to your vehicle, you can choose a specific contact or recent call or enter a phone number directly to make a call. You can switch between private mode and hands-free mode during a call.

You can browse your recent calls, or switch to other Bluetooth phone devices or hide your recent calls in the dialing interface.

Connect to Mobile Device

You can connect mobile devices (such as mobile phones, tablets) to the vehicle through interior Bluetooth or Wireless hotspots, and the center display can synchronize the entertainment features (such as phone contacts, music) in the mobile device with your confirmation, which is convenient for you to better experience the entertainment features inside the vehicle. When you connect the same mobile device to the vehicle the next time, it can be automatically synchronized to the center display without reconfirmation.

Tap the Bluetooth/Wireless hotspot icon at the top of the center display to select the Bluetooth or Wireless hotspot you want to connect to:

1. Turn on the Bluetooth or Wi-Fi feature on your mobile device (mobile phone or tablet).
2. Turn on the Bluetooth or Wireless hotspot feature on the center display.
3. Select the mobile device you want to connect to on the current interface of the center display, and manually pair it with the vehicle to connect.

You can also quickly connect to Bluetooth and Wireless hotspot with one tap on the central control wireless charging board (only for some mobile phone models):

1. Turn on the NFC and Bluetooth/Wi-Fi features on the phone.
2. Place your phone on the wireless charging board of the center console.

3. Open the Bluetooth or Hotspot interface on the center display, and select "One-tap quick connection through the mobile NFC feature".

   Note

   Do not remove your phone from the charging pad when it is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth or Hotspot.

Wireless Charging

You can place your wireless charging equipment on the wireless charging board next to the cup holder on the central armrest for wireless charging.

The wireless charging feature is enabled by default. You can enter the Wireless Charging from the status bar at the top right of the center display to turn it off. The current status is saved under the account of the owner or the authorized user. The center display displays the current charging status.

When the NFC one-key pairing feature of interior Bluetooth is being used by the wireless charging board, wireless charging will be temporarily stopped.

Wireless charging will stop in the following situations, and the center display will prompt the relevant status:

- The charging is completed.
- Errors in the charging process, including vehicle power supply over-voltage or under-voltage.

You can choose to disable **NFC Detection**, in which case the wireless charging board won't recognize NFC cards and the card recognition prompt won't appear when the phone is placed.

Caution

- When wireless charging is enabled, any metal object (such as a key, coin or NFC card) placed on the wireless charging pad may affect its charging efficiency or even lead to a burn.
- When using wireless charging, do not place any metal objects between the phone and the charging plate, such as coins and cards with chips/battery. Do not use phone cases with metal materials, such as those that support magnetic charging (MagSafe).
- It is normal for the phone to become hot after being charged for a long period of time. Do not place a fully charged device on the charging pad. Doing so can cause overheating.
- Do not charge two or more devices wirelessly at the same time.
- The vent of the cooling fan is at the bottom of the wireless charging pad. Prevent small foreign objects and liquids from entering it.

NOMI Smart Assistant

The vehicle smart assistant, NOMI, is placed above the vehicle center console. You and your passengers can easily control different features by simply talking to NOMI, your thoughtful helper during the journey.

After you've entered the car, NOMI will greet you warmly. Whenever you need NOMI, say the wake-up words “Hi, NOMI” or press the voice button on the right side of the steering wheel. After NOMI responds, just say what you have to say (see some examples below). When the conversation ends or the designated request has been completed, NOMI will automatically enter standby mode. Whenever necessary, you can always wake up NOMI again.

Tell NOMI your opinion about the different features in the car by saying "I want to give feedback." NOMI will record your feedback for up to 60 seconds and send it to our product expert team, together with necessary information, including your vehicle ID, account ID and time stamp. The recording will be sent after the countdown.

Please find some examples of NOMI commands here, including but not limit to the list function：

Topic	Voice command examples
Climate	"Climate control on" "Turn off the fan" "Dfrost mode on" "Turn on seat heating"
Lights	"Change Ambient light to green" "Turn on resding lights" "Turn off all lights"
Comfort	"Fold the mirrors" "I want seat heating" "Open my window by 10%" "Close all windows" "Pet mode on" "Turn on parking camera"
Media	"Play music" "Play favorites" "Play "Blinding lights" on Tidal" "Next song" "Repeat" "Pause" "Play radio" "Increase volume"
Navigation	"Go to [address]" "Drive me to a hospital" "find me a coffee shop" "End navigation" "Find a charging station" "I need a power swap station" "Mute navigation"
Phone	"Accep the call" "Decline the call" "Call [contact name]" "Call [number]" "Call back"
thers	"Mute system" "Mute yourself" "Unmute" "Turn on Bluetooth" "Take a picture" "Increase the cenrtal screen brightness" "What's the weather today"

Warning

- Do not allow NOMI and its base to come into contact with liquids, acidic or alkaline solutions, dust, fibers, magnetic substances, etc.
- Do not disassemble or repair NOMI and its base by yourself.
- Do not use external force to push, pull, or twist NOMI. Avoid using external force to hinder the movement of NOMI.
- Do not attempt to remove NOMI and its base by yourself.
- Do not install a hard helmet or cap on NOMI to avoid damaging it, thereby avoiding personal injury in the event of an accident.

Comfort Features

When the vehicle is in PARK (without being locked from the outside) and the driver's seat is unoccupied, occupants can still enter the vehicle and access certain comfort features. The feature will automatically turn off after 10 hours without any operations. To continue using a comfort feature, open any door, press the brake pedal, or sit in the driver's seat with the driver's door closed.

Comfort features mainly include:

- Driver's/passenger seat adjustment
- Steering Wheel Adjustment
- Wireless Charging
- Front A/C Control
- Seat massage, heating and ventilation
- Steering Wheel Heating
- Window Control
- Reading lights and ambient lighting
- Entertainment and navigation
- NOMI

Intelligent Fragrance System

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent fragrance system. You and your family can choose your favorite fragrance, and enjoy the fresh and comfortable olfactory pleasure during the journey.

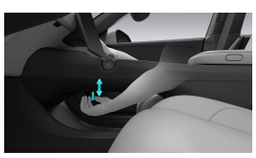
It provides you with a variety of scents. You can choose your favorite fragrance and install it in the fragrance mechanism above the open storage area of the center console, and change the fragrance vial according to your preferences.

How to install and change the fragrance vial:

1. Open the cap of the fragrance vial, insert the thin end of the fragrance vial upward into the hole in the fragrance mechanism above the open storage area of the center console, and gently press the bottom of the vial upward to ensure that it is properly installed.

   Caution

   Do not rotate the fragrance cartridge when inserting it.

2. The fragrance vial will be secured by the magnet in the fragrance mechanism once it is inserted into the hole.
3. The center display will prompt that the fragrance vial has been installed successfully and display information about the fragrance inserted into the corresponding hole.
4. When replacing the fragrance vial, pinch the bottom of the fragrance vial with your fingers, and slowly remove the fragrance vial from the fragrance mechanism.

After the fragrance is successfully installed, enter the Air Conditioning Settings interface from the center display, tap **Fragrance**, and on this interface, you can control whether the fragrance system is on/off, adjust the concentration of the corresponding fragrance, and select fragrances with different scents.

Warning

- Keep the fragrance cartridge out of the reach of children to prevent them from swallowing it accidentally, as this may be detrimental to their health.
- Do not allow your child to insert their finger into the fragrance holder. Doing so may result in injury.
- To ensure your safety, do not insert or replace the fragrance cartridge while driving.
- If you or any passenger feels discomfort, disable the fragrance system immediately.

Caution

- Please check the expiration date before inserting the fragrance cartridge. The fragrance has a shelf life of one year if the bottle remains unopened; after the bottle is opened, the fragrance can last three months. Stop using the fragrance and replace it after it expires.
- Some fragrances (e.g. Wild) have a stimulating effect. Please use it only when needed.
- When replacing the fragrance cartridge, keep your hands clean to ensure the fragrance system can function normally after it is replaced.
- A magnet is placed in each fragrance holder. Keep your smart phone, tablet and other electronic devices away from the holder to avoid any interference between electronic devices and the fragrance system.
- Chemical reactions may occur between the fragrance and organic substances. Keep the ceramic fragrance stuck in the fragrance cartridge and away from all plastic parts.

Note

- The experience with the fragrance system may vary depending to the cabin temperature, fan speed, and user's physical condition.
- Only purchase genuine ceramic fragrance sticks and avoid damaging the fragrance cartridge to ensure its quality.
- If the fragrance cartridge cannot be identified after it is inserted, please try again.

Tide

Tide is a physical and psychological health app that helps you sleep, meditate, relax, and stay focused. Inspired by travels, nature and meditation, Tide provides a wealth of audio resources such as sounds of nature and meditation exercises to help you escape from the fast-paced world for a quiet space of peace, where you can meditate for a while to relax your mind and sleep better with less anxiety and stress while staying focused and calm.

Tide offers three modes, namely Nap, Meditation, and Breathing.

Nap Mode

You and your family can fall asleep to the sounds of nature in the vehicle and wake up to a soft alarm to embrace a beautiful world.

You or your authorized users can enter the application launcher to open the **Tide > Nap** page where sound scenarios and alarm time for the nap can be set and memorized for the specific account.

- Nap by Time: You can set a nap countdown to wake you up at the set time. You can also choose to continue or end the nap upon the alarm.
- Nap by Charge: If the vehicle is in the DC charging process, you can set a battery level within the charging limit to have a nap until the set level is reached.
- More settings are provided, including volumes and timed playback of sleep aid sounds, alarm clock sounds and volumes, and seat position restoration switch upon the end of nap.
- Set sleep aid sound scenarios.

After the vehicle enters the Nap Mode, the in-vehicle lighting will be turned off, with windows and doors closed and locked, the climate control will be automatically set to the temperature comfortable for a nap, and the air purifier will be automatically turned on. If you sit in a front seat, the seat will automatically move to the relax position (if set previously) or the default position. NOMI will enter the Do Not Disturb Mode to create a relaxing atmosphere for you. After the nap ends, the vehicle will restore the settings before the nap.

Caution

- Before entering the Nap Mode, make sure the vehicle is in PARK and not in the power swap mode.
- Close all the doors and the liftgate before starting the Nap Mode to ensure safety.
- A fault with the climate control system may compromise the comfort during the nap.
- When the front seats are moving backward at the beginning of the nap, pay attention to the space for occupants on rear seats.
- If the vehicle is not being charged, make sure that its remaining range is not less than 60 km. The time alarm will be triggered automatically when the remaining range is less than 30 km, and the charging alarm will be triggered automatically when the charging connector is disconnected or the charging runs into a fault, to remind you to check the battery level.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the Nap Mode under certain circumstances, for example, when the vehicle is not in PARK, the battery has a risk of ignition, a software update is in progress, the vehicle is in the power swap mode, the vehicle is locked for sleep, the climate control is faulty, and the account is switched. In this case, the seats cannot be automatically restored to the positions before the nap.

Meditation Mode

The Meditation Mode provides an immersive experience to give your brain break, so that you can feel your inner self and your surroundings and reduce your physical and mental exhaustion.

You or your authorized users can enter the application launcher to open the **Tide > Meditation** page where sound scenarios and sound volumes for the meditation can be set and memorized for the specific account.

After the vehicle enters the Meditation Mode, the in-vehicle lighting will be turned off, with windows and doors closed and locked, the climate control will be automatically set to the temperature comfortable for meditation, and the air purifier will be automatically turned on. NOMI will enter the Do Not Disturb Mode to create an immersive and quiet atmosphere for you. After the meditation ends, the vehicle will restore the settings before the meditation.

Caution

- Please verify that the vehicle is in the park gear and not in the power swap mode.
- Please close all doors and the tailgate before starting the mode to ensure safety.
- If the vehicle is not in charging process, it is necessary to ensure that the vehicle range is not less than 30 kilometers.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the current mode in certain situations, such as if it is in a non-park gear, has a risk of battery fire, has software updates, has entered power swap mode, is locked and asleep, and is switching accounts.

Breathing Mode

The Breathing Mode helps you learn how to breathe properly, calm yourself down, and relieve stress.

You or your authorized users can enter the application launcher to open the **Tide > Breathing** page where breathing scenarios and background sound scenarios and volumes can be set and memorized for the specific account.

Caution

- Please verify that the vehicle is in the park gear and not in the power swap mode.
- Please close all doors and the tailgate before starting the mode to ensure safety.

- If the vehicle is not in charging process, it is necessary to ensure that the vehicle range is not less than 30 kilometers.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the current mode in certain situations, such as if it is in a non-park gear, has a risk of battery fire, has software updates, has entered power swap mode, is locked and asleep, and is switching accounts.

Quick Access

You can tap **Quick Access** in the application launcher on the center display to freely combine apps for customized scenarios, or enter the Square interface to enjoy a personalized and automated intelligent experience using the recommended Quick Access templates.

Actions that support custom shortcuts include: time, media, weather, cabin comfort, driving, charge, doors, windows, seats, lighting, system settings and applications, and other common settings. You can also share custom scenarios with friends.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

If the following indicators do not light up or go out normally, please contact the NIO Service Center for assistance immediately.

Symbol on Instrument Cluster Display	Description
	Automatic high and low beam control indicator
	High beam indicator
	Autohold indicator
	Position lights indicator
	Low beam indicator
	Front fog lights indicator
	Vehicle ready indicator
	Left turn signal indicator
	Right turn signal indicator
	Rear fog lights indicator
	Ice- and snow-covered road indicator
	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) off indicator
	Brake system fault indicator
	Electronic stability control system on/fault indicator
	Low battery indicator of high-voltage battery
	Exceeding speed limit prompt or speed limit mode malfunction indicator
	Trailer connection status indicator
	Intelligent headlight malfunction indicator
	Electronic stability control system off indicator
	Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) system fault/start self-inspection indicator
	Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) system indicator for no face detected
	Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Assist off indicator

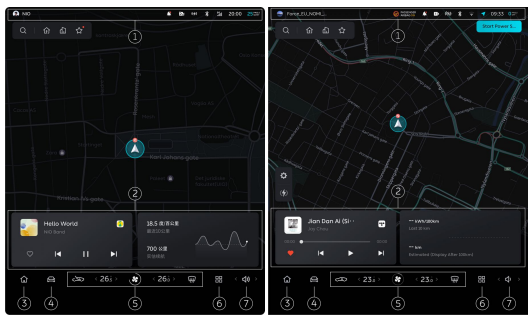
	Speed Limit Warning off indicator
	Power limit warning light
	Anti-lock braking system fault warning light
	Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (dTPMS) warning light
	High-voltage battery cut-off warning light
	Autonomous Emergency Brake (AEB)/Forward Collision Warning (FCW) off and fault warning light
	Hands-off reminder status indicator
	Charging cable connected indicator
	Electronic parking indicator
	Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning (DDAW) status indicator
	E-Powertrain System fault warning light
	Electronic parking fault warning light
	Seat belt unfastened reminder warning light
	Airbag fault warning light
	Drive motor fault warning light
	Low voltage battery charging fault warning light
	High-voltage battery fault warning light
	High-voltage battery over-temperature warning light
	Trailer electrical connection fault warning light
	Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert fault warning light
	Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)/Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B) fault warning light
	Driver Assistance fault warning light
	Speed limit feature fault warning light
	Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion fault warning light
	Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Assist fault warning light

Controls on Center Display

Front Center Display

After you or authorized users log in, the vehicle's center display can help you easily access rich personal resources such as music, navigation, and radio stations. You can also customize your favorite content and store it in your personal account. The personalized content saved in your account can be displayed the next time you login in to your account. You can switch different accounts freely in your vehicle, and the customized content for different accounts will be presented to you.

You can select different features (media, navigation, etc.) on the main interface of the center display. The features are as follows:



1. Prompt Bar

   Displays prompt messages, warning messages, warning icons, etc.

2. Tile Feature Menu

   Press+hold to switch to different feature tiles, such as music, weather, etc.

3. Main Interface

   To return to the main interface, tap this button or five-finger pinch on any interface of the center display.

4. Vehicle Settings

   Configure the settings for common features.

   You can also swipe right from the left edge of the center display to enter the Quick Access interface. On this interface, you can access frequently used features quickly and customize quick access features.

5. Air Conditioning and Comfort Feature Panel

   Quickly set the air conditioning, seats, and comfort features here.

6. Application Center

   Select different applications, such as weather and photos.

7. Volume Settings

   Quickly set the system and media volume.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of Event Data Recorder (EDR) is to record the data of some collisions or the conditions similar to a collision, such as airbag deployment or collision with obstacles on the road; these data can help to check the operation status of the vehicle's systems.

The Event Data Recorder (EDR) on this vehicle can temporarily or permanently store technical information such as vehicle status, events and faults. These technical information can usually record the following status of components, modules, systems and environments:

- Status information of the vehicle and its individual components, such as vehicle speed, acceleration and vehicle identification code.
- Feature status of important system components, such as seat belt buckles.
- Vehicle reaction under special conditions, such as the triggering of airbags and the intervention of electronic stability program (ESP).
- Data of a period of time before and after a collision accident, such as braking, acceleration, steering operation, accident occurrence time, deployment information of occupant protection devices, seat belt status information, etc.

These data help to better check the conditions when a collision or an injury occurs.

In Event Data Recorder (EDR), the recording of vehicle speed comes from the brake control unit.

These data are only of natural attributes, which are used to identify and eliminate faults and optimize vehicle features, and the motion characteristics of road sections passed cannot be created based on these data. When carrying out service work such as repair and maintenance, service personnel and the manufacturer can read these technical data from the event and fault data memory by using a special diagnostic device. After the fault is eliminated, the information in the fault memory can be deleted or overwritten continuously.

When the vehicle is being used, these technical parameters and other information related to the vehicle, such as accident records, vehicle damage, evidence, etc. (which may require the intervention of professionals), can be read by using a diagnostic device in a NIO Service Center.

If the EDR system does not have enough space to record an event, the current event data will overwrite the previous unlocked event data, but the overwriting should be in a chronological order. A locked event will not be overwritten by subsequent events.

Note

NIO will not disclose any information recorded in the system to a third party without your permission or consent.

System Update

Your vehicle comes with a remote upgrade system. When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, you can go to the Settings interface from the bottom of the center display, and tap **General > System Update** to upgrade the vehicle system software. and keep your vehicle features up to date. You will be notified by a message when a software update is available. You can choose to start the upgrade immediately or schedule a time for upgrade (the vehicle can automatically start upgrading at the appointed time). During the upgrade, the center display will show the time needed to complete the process (which depends on the size of the upgrade package).

Caution

- The system upgrade function is only available for the vehicle owner's account.
- The system upgrade can only be carried out when the vehicle is in the parked state (in the P gear) and connected to the network.
- The system upgrade process will consume a certain amount of power. Before the system upgrade, please ensure that the battery level of the vehicle is greater than 20% and your trip has been reasonably planned.
- If the system upgrade is performed for the vehicle during the charging process, the charging process will stop automatically. After the system upgrade is completed, you can resume the charging process manually.
- During the system upgrade process, the vehicle can also be unlocked/locked with the NFC/mobile Bluetooth key in addition to the smart key. The vehicle cannot be driven.
- System upgrades may result in updates or additions of some features, as well as changes in the usage habits of certain features. Please read the upgrade instructions carefully to understand the updated or added features after the system upgrade is completed. Please use the updated function with caution if you are unfamiliar with it to avoid personal injury or property damage due to a misoperation.
- If the system upgrade cannot be started or is not completed successfully, please contact the NIO service center immediately.
- Do not modify vehicle components or software by yourself to avoid personal injury or property damage due to a system upgrade failure.

Resetting All Settings

When you need to sell the vehicle, you can erase all content and settings by entering Settings from the bottom of the center display, and tap **General > Reset All Settings**.

The following data and settings will be erased, including vehicle settings (such as settings for seats, side mirrors, and climate control), driving settings (such as ADAS and driving mode), NOMI settings, system settings (such as time and date), navigation settings, media playlists, and photos & videos.

Caution

- Only the vehicle owner can reset all settings. The operation can only be performed when the vehicle is stopped.
- When resetting all settings, the instrument cluster and the center display will go black and blink. Do not drive the vehicle when resetting the system. Otherwise it may cause unpredictable consequences.
- After resetting, the vehicle will be restored to the inactivated state. You need to reactivate the vehicle to use it.
- Resetting will erase all your settings, application data and all content, including photos and videos, stored in the vehicle. It is recommended to back up your important files before resetting. You can enter the **Album on the center display** , select files you need and choose **Export to USB**.
- Resetting will not erase your personal data stored in the cloud, such as driving habits, frequent navigation addresses, and music playlists.

Basic Operation

Starting the Vehicle

The vehicle can get ready to drive when the following conditions are met:

1. The driver is seated
2. Close the driver's door or press the brake pedal.

The driver can start the vehicle in many ways such as with the smart key, NFC card, and mobile phone NFC.

If the mobile phone NFC or NFC card is used, place the mobile phone with the NFC key or NFC card on the wireless charging board, keep the mobile phone unlocked and fit it into the wireless charging board, and then try to engage the gear and start the vehicle.

Caution

When starting the vehicle via an NFC card, ensure that your phone or NFC card is placed on the wireless charging pad.

Caution

When using an NFC card, ensure that your phone is turned on and remains unlocked.

Since Apple Inc. does not allow third parties to access NFC, iOS is not supported at present.

Caution

In case of a collision, the impact force is transmitted to the driver’s lower leg through the accelerator pedal, causing personal injury. Therefore, the accelerator pedal has a fracture limiter groove to protect the driver’s legs and personal safety.

In unexpected situations where a great lateral external force is applied to the vehicle, the accelerator pedal may break due to the limiter groove design.

Gear Shift

After pressing the brake pedal and toggling the gear shifter into the D or R gear, the digital instrument cluster displays READY, indicating that power output is ready. After the shift, the digital instrument cluster will display the real-time gear position of the vehicle. If the shift fails, the digital instrument cluster will prompt you to confirm the current gear.

You can use the PRD gear shifter to control gear switching, including:

- Drive gear (D gear): used in normal drive mode
- Reverse gear (R gear): can only be engaged in the parking state
- Parking gear (P gear): prevents slipping in the parking state

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Sound > Gear Shift Sound** to enable or disable the ringer and alerts.

For example, the vehicle can be switched to neutral gear (N gear) in specific conditions such as while pushing the vehicle and automatic washing.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display） , and tap **Driving and Parking > N (Neutral Mode)** to enable or disable neutral gear (N gear).

Caution

Always confirm the gear on the digital instrument cluster after shifting gears. If there are any inconsistencies with the gear displayed, double confirm or shift gears again.

Caution

You can only shift into PARK when the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is pressed.

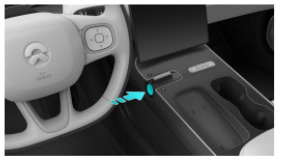
Warning

Before leaving the vehicle or stopping it on a slope, ensure that the gear is shifted into PARK. If you have not confirmed the gear on the digital instrument cluster, the vehicle may roll away.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

When switching to the parking gear, the parking brake will be automatically activated, and the digital instrument cluster displays , indicating that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) has been enabled.

When locked from the outside of the vehicle, the vehicle's power will be automatically turned off, and the center display and digital instrument cluster will be shut down at the same time.



You can switch the vehicle to the parking gear in the following ways.

- Press the P gear button on the side of the gear selector in the center console.
- Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Electric Parking Brake (EPB)** to park.

When the digital instrument cluster displays , it indicates that the brake system is faulty. Please drive carefully and contact the NIO Service Center for maintenance.

Drive Mode

There are five basic drive modes on the vehicle: Sport+, Sport, Comfort, Eco, and Custom. You can change the Acceleration, Regenerative Braking, Steering Force, and Climate control settings using the modes.

Drive modes can be selected to alter the vehicle's driving characteristic, improve your driving experience, or accommodate your unique driving requirements in special cases.

	Sport+	Sport	Comfort	Eco	Custom
Acceleration	4s	5.9s	7.9s	9.9s	4s, 5.9s, 7.9s, 9.9s, 12.9s
Regenerative Braking	Low	Low	Low	Standard	Standard, Low, Very Low
Steering Force	Steady	Standard	Comfort	Comfort	Steady, Standard, Comfort
Climate control	Standard	Standard	Standard	Eco	Standard, Eco
Note: Sport+, Sport, Comfort and Eco modes are customizable except for acceleration performance					

In Eco mode, the system will prioritize the saving of energy consumption for your vehicle. Compared with other drive modes, the comfortableness of the air conditioning is slightly poor. If necessary, you can set a higher or lower temperature than what is set in other modes manually.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Drive mode** to enter the settings.

Scenario Assist

Snow Mode

Snow mode is appropriate for snow-covered roads, low-traction roads with a mixture of wet asphalt, snow, and ice, as well as slippery grass.

When the mode is activated, the vehicle retains all-wheel drive, with power distributed evenly to the front and rear wheels, and the accelerator pedal is relatively gentle, so as to guarantee a smooth start and to avoid slipping on slippery surfaces such as ice, which secures the driving through snowy terrain.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Snow Mode** to turn this feature on or off.

Caution

The Snow Mode of your vehicle can improve your driving safety. However, please still drive with caution, and depress the accelerator and brake pedal slowly to control your vehicle speed. Pay attention to whether there are foreign objects in the surrounding environment of your vehicle to avoid damaging your vehicle.

Wet Mode

Wet Mode is appropriate for slick hard asphalt or flooded roads, as well as congested, slick sand and mud conditions.

Wet Mode increases stability and smoothness of the vehicle when starting, braking, and cornering. The vehicle retains all-wheel drive, with power distributed evenly to the front and rear wheels and with extremely low regenerative braking.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Wet Mode** to turn this feature on or off.

Caution

- The Wet Mode of your vehicle can improve your driving safety. However, please still drive with caution, and depress the accelerator and brake pedal slowly to control your vehicle speed. Pay attention to whether there are foreign objects in the surrounding environment of your vehicle to avoid damaging your vehicle.
- Do not drive your vehicle onto muddy or swampy roads to avoid getting stuck or trapped.

Sand Mode

Sand Mode is appropriate for congested hard roadbed sandy soil and Gobi road surfaces.

Sand Mode smooths out the vehicle's starting and braking, allowing for some side-to-side slippage while preventing bogging and retaining forward ability. To improve driving enjoyment in sandy conditions, the vehicle retains all-wheel drive with increased power delivery to the rear axle, more aggressive power delivery, and vehicle stability control with extremely low regenerative braking.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Sand Mode** to turn this feature on or off.

Caution

- The Sand Mode of your vehicle can improve your driving safety. However, please still drive with caution, and pay attention to whether there are foreign objects in the surrounding environment of your vehicle to avoid damaging your vehicle.
- Please do not drive your vehicle into soft deserts and seaside beaches to avoid getting stuck.

Trailer Mode

The vehicle automatically detects trailer connection and adjusts settings such as suspension height, rearview mirror angle, driver assistance, and safety features to adapt to the towing scenario.

Before towing, please shift to the P gear, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Tow Hitch**. This will extend the tow hitch. When a trailer is towed, Trailer Mode must always be active. When you connect the trailer's electrical harness, the vehicle will enable Trailer Mode after you confirm. Trailer Mode is deactivated when the trailer's electrical harness is disconnected. To manually enable or exit Trailer Mode, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving and Parking > Trailer Mode**. One of the following indicators is displayed on the instrument panel at this time:

Icon	Description
	The vehicle has detected the connection of the trailer lights, but Trailer Mode is not activated. The vehicle may already have an accessory connected.
	The vehicle has detected an electrical connection fault with the trailer lights. Some or all of the trailer lights may be faulty. To ensure your safety, pull over as soon as possible and check the wiring or connection of the trailer lights for faults. If the problem has been resolved but the red icon is still on, please try turning off Trailer Mode and then turning it on again.

Warning

- Before towing, be sure to check that the Tow Mode is on.
- Under no circumstances should the Tow Mode be exited during the towing process. Doing so may result in serious injury and/or death.
- Do not use the ride height adjustment setting on the center display to properly match the height of the towing device to the height of the trailer.

Note

- Some PILOT features (Steering Assist, Active Lane Change, etc.) as well as kick sensors, easy entry, and ultrasonic sensors may not be available in the Trailer Mode.
- Please connect your vehicle to a trailer under the normal ride height. If you enter the Trailer Mode under an abnormal ride height, the ride height will be automatically adjusted to normal.

ECO+ Mode

The power consumption of the vehicle can be reduced to attain greater range by disabling features that are not required for driving to meet the driving needs at the minimum.

In ECO+ Mode, the vehicle's top speed is constrained, driver assistance and other features are momentarily inaccessible, and comfort features like air conditioning and ambient lighting are also restricted.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > ECO+ Mode** to turn this feature on or off.

You can switch to any regular drive mode or exit the ECO+ Mode by tapping the button again.

Feature Settings

Autohold

The feature of Autohold is to keep the vehicle stationary for temporary parking when the brake pedal is released.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Driving and Parking > How to Activate Autohold** and select the corresponding method to activate Autohold.

- Flooring: Step on the brake pedal until the vehicle stops, then slightly release and step on the pedal again to activate Autohold.
- Auto activation: Step on the brake pedal until the vehicle stops, and then Autohold will be automatically activated.

When Autohold is activated, the icon will be displayed on the digital instrument cluster. When it is activated, you can step on the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal to deactivate Autohold.

Caution

The Autohold mode will not be enabled when the vehicle is in REVERSE (R gear). You still need to use Full Press Activation to park.

You can also floor the brake pedal to activate Autohold in an emergency.

You can also activate Autohold when parking on an uphill road, where the braking system will provide sufficient braking force to keep the vehicle stationary in accordance with the degree of the slope.

Caution

The grade of the slope shall not exceed 20%.

Emergency Braking

In the event of a brake pedal failure, you can activate Emergency Braking by pressing the Park gear button, which will produce full braking deceleration under normal circumstances to stop the vehicle.

- Press and hold the Park gear button to activate Emergency Braking.
- Release the Park gear button, or step on the accelerator pedal to deactivate Emergency Braking. To re-activate Emergency Braking, you will need to press the button again.

Caution

Do not activate Emergency Braking unless in emergency situations where the brake pedal malfunctions or is stuck.

Warning

When you drive on large curves, uneven roads, or icy and snowy roads in winter, activating the emergency braking feature may cause your vehicle to spin or slip. Please drive with caution.

Hill Start Assist

Hill Start Assist System (HSA) prevents your vehicle from rolling backwards when starting uphill.

When your foot switches from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal, the pressure on the brake pedal will be maintained in the brake system for a maximum of 2 seconds. The temporary braking effect will disappear after 2 seconds or when you accelerate.

Start Reminder

After the vehicle stops by following the lead vehicle, if the lead vehicle drives away, Start Reminder will send you an alert.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Start Reminder** to turn this feature on or off.

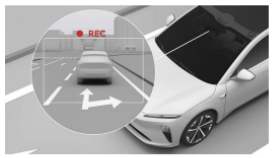
While enabled, when you manually stop the vehicle as the lead vehicle stops, and do not follow as the lead vehicle drives away, Start Reminder will send you an alert.

Warning

Lead Vehicle Start Alert serves as a reference only and cannot substitute your visual observation. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road conditions, and drive at an appropriate and safe speed in compliance with applcable traffic laws and regulations.

Digital Video Recorder (DVR)

The Digital Video Recorder (DVR) feature includes Rolling Recording, Emergencies and Quick Video Record.



Caution

The Digital Video Recorder does not work when the vehicle is parked and powered off.

Rolling Recording

The Digital Video Recorder (DVR) includes the main view angle and the front/rear/left/right surround view angles, supporting simultaneous recording and real-time previews.

- Main view angle: only records the main view angle of the camera, which supports a maximum resolution of 3840x1696 and has a picture fluency of 30 frames per second.
- Five view angles: records all view angles of the camera, with four surround view cameras that support a maximum resolution of 1280×1000 and have a picture fluency of 30 frames per second.

The longest continuous rolling recording time for the main view angle of Digital Video Recorder (DVR) is about 10 hours, and 5.7 hours for the five view angles. When the corresponding time is exceeded, the original video file will be overwritten.

The contents of the rolling recording will be stored in the **Photos > DVR > Rolling Recording** folder. If you want to save a specific video file, insert a storage device such as a USB flash drive, select the video file, and transfer it to save it in the storage device.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Safety > DVR** to enable or disable this feature.

- When the feature is enabled, will be displayed at the top of the center display.
- When the feature is disabled, will be displayed at the top of the center display.

The Digital Video Recorder (DVR) supports sound recording and watermarking features, which are disabled by default and need to be enabled manually.

In the Settings for the recording interface of the Digital Video Recorder (DVR), Tap **Sound Recording**to enable or disable the feature.

In the Settings for the recording interface of the Digital Video Recorder (DVR), Tap **Traffic Data Watermarking**to enable or disable the feature.

When the sound recording feature is enabled, will be displayed at the top of the center display, and the Digital Video Recorder (DVR) can record sound.

When the Digital Video Recorder (DVR) feature is enabled, the camera will be turned on and continue to record rolling videos until the video recording is terminated.

Emergency Video Recording

The emergency video recording feature can record video images in the vehicle's memory. If the Autonomous Emergency Brake (AEB) is triggered or the airbag is detonated, the emergency video will be recorded and saved.

The emergency videos include videos recorded 30 seconds before the emergency and 60 seconds after the emergency. The contents of the emergency video recording will be stored in the **Photos > Digital Video Recorder (DVR) > Emergency** folder. If you want to save a specific video file, insert a storage device such as a USB flash drive, select the file, and transfer it to save it in the storage device.

Quick Video Record

The Quick Video Record feature covers most manually triggered scenarios, such as a violation of regulations, deliberate provocations, interesting moments, etc., which can be saved in time, recorded conveniently and found quickly.

Go to the Quick Access interface by swiping right on the home interface of the center display, tap **Quick Video Record** to start recording, while REC is displayed at the top of the center display.

The quick video recording saves videos recorded 30 seconds before and 60 seconds after it is triggered. The contents of the quick video recording will be stored in the **Photos > DVR > Emergencies** folder. If you want to save a specific video file, insert a storage device such as a USB flash drive, select the file, and transfer it to save it in the storage device.

Caution

The storage space for emergency videos will not be cyclically overwritten, and manual cleaning is required when the storage space is full. Otherwise, the video recording feature will be affected.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

When your vehicle is traveling at low speeds (typically lower than 30 km/h), it emits a sound to alert other road users in the surrounding area, such as pedestrians and other vehicles.

Parking Camera and Parking Assist

Parking Assist monitors the surrounding conditions of vehicles at low speeds through ultrasonic sensors to help you drive safely.

During parking, your vehicle will warn you with warning tones and images according to the distance between obstacles and the front or rear of the vehicle.

Distance	Frequency of the warning tones	Color
1.2-1.5m	None	White
0.9-1.2m	0, 1, 2 times per second	White
0.6-0.9m	0, 2, 3 times per second	Orange
0.3-0.6m	3, 4, 5 times per second	Orange
Less than 0.3m	High-frequency beeps	Red

Caution

The front and rear alarm areas of your vehicle shall not exceed 1.5 meters.

Warning

Parking Assist serves as a reference only, and cannot substitute your visual observation.

As a driving assist feature, Parking Assist cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Parking Assist only after your safety is ensured.

It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and complies with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Enabling/Disabling Parking Camera

You can enable the parking camera in the following ways:

- Swipe right from the main interface of the center display to enter the Quick Access interface, and tap **360 Surround View** to open the 360° panoramic camera.
- Enter the application center from the center display and tap **Parking** to open the memory view (360° panoramic camera or dual view camera).
- Engage the vehicle in R gear and open the memory view (360° panoramic camera or dual view camera).
- Press+hold the Middle button on the right side of the steering wheel, set the custom feature to **360 Surround View**, and then open the 360° panoramic camera.
- Wake up NOMI, enable **Parking**with your voice, and open the 360° panoramic camera.

You can tap on the upper right side of the parking camera interface and select to turn off the warning tone. At the same time, you should bear all the risks caused by turning off the warning tone.

Caution

Parking Camera will be automatically disabled when your vehicle is in PARK or moving faster than 21 km/h.

You can also disable Parking Camera manually by grabbing with five fingers on the center display or by tapping the Off button in the upper left.

Warning

The ultrasonic sensor may have limited detection capabilities and information such as "Front Parking Radar Failure", "Rear Parking Radar Failure", "Parking Radar System Failure" may be displayed in the following situations, which include but are not limited to:

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are damaged, misplaced, or obscured (such as by mud, ice and snow or vehicle covering).
- The performance of the ultrasonic sensors is affected by severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, and haze.
- Sensors are affected by other electrical equipment or devices that can cause interference.

Caution

In some situations, the ultrasonic sensor may give false alarms due to its characteristics. This will disappear as road conditions change and will not affect the normal driving of your vehicle. Which include but are not limited to:

- Rough asphalt, cement or cobble pavement, waterlogged roads and other types of uneven pavement.
- Induction coils and other items embedded in the road.
- Interference caused by large vehicles, construction machinery and other equipment nearby.

Warning

Ultrasonic sensor detection may be restricted for certain obstacles, including obstacles that are low or narrow, or which come from the top or side of the vehicle. In these cases, you should always pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so may result in property damage or personal injury. These obstacles include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians, children, and animals
- Open parking locks, low stone blocks, low cylinders, thin rods, pointed objects, potholes, etc.
- Height restriction barriers, height bars, or suspended structures
- Obstacles on the side of the vehicle's body that may cause a collision or scratches
- Bicycles, corners of walls and square columns in parking lots, etc.

Parking Camera Interface

The parking camera consists of two interfaces: 360° panoramic camera and dual view camera. Tap the button on the upper left side of the 360° panoramic camera to switch the interfaces.

Button	Feature
	Switch to the dual view camera.
	Switch to the 360° panoramic camera.
	Switch to Quick Access.
	Switch to the hub view.

Parking Camera View

After opening the dual view camera interface, you can switch to the front view and rear view by switching between the drive gear (D gear) and the reverse gear (R gear), or tap the 3D view, front view, rear view, left and right hub view, front hub view and rear hub view in the lower left area of the center display to switch between different views.

When using the 3D view, you can adjust the viewing angle by swiping with one finger, adjust the viewing distance by zooming in with two fingers and adjust the viewing height by swiping up and down with two fingers.

Caution

When the center display shows the left/right wheel view, front wheel view, or rear wheel view, the parking view will not change when you shift gears.

Adjusting the Brightness of the Parking Camera

Auto Adjustment

Tap "Quick Access" in the parking camera interface to find "Brightness Adjustment", then select "Auto". The brightness of the center display can be automatically adjusted along with the brightness of the environment.

Manual Adjustment

Tap "Quick Access" in the parking camera interface to find "Brightness Adjustment", then slide the brightness adjustment slider to manually adjust the brightness of the center display. Before manually adjusting the brightness of the center display, please ensure that the "Auto" switch is OFF.

Camera View Angle Tracking in Steering

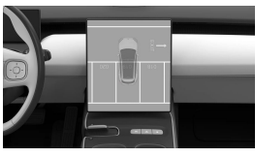
After the feature is activated, the viewing angle of the front and rear reversing images will be adjusted according to the rotation angle of the steering wheel, helping users expand their reversing view and improving parking safety.

Enter the application center from the bottom of the center display, tap **Parking**, and turn on **Steering Angle Tracking** in

the parking settings.

Dynamic Transparent Chassis

Dynamic transparent chassis refers to a transparent effect that can be presented, via technical processing, on the road images collected by the camera in advance when the vehicle is moving, and transmitted to the center display of the vehicle so that the road conditions can be seen in the vehicle.



You can enable this feature on the Settings interface of the parking camera. After the dynamic transparent chassis is enabled, the transparency of the model during driving can be customized, which includes four options: "opaque", "low", "medium" and "high".

Caution

The Dynamic Transparent Chassis cannot detect possible environmental changes under the chassis when the vehicle is stationary. Please drive with caution and always pay attention to your surroundings to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Blind Area around the Vehicle Model

Due to the relative relationship between the camera installation position and the body, there is a blind area of about 30cm around the vehicle in the 360° panoramic camera interface. Please pay attention to the actual situation around your vehicle when parking.

Caution

The blind spot indication shown in the surround view image serves as a reference only, and cannot substitute your visual observation.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and park the vehicle only after your safety is ensured.

Due to the existence of blind spots, some low objects close to the vehicle may not be fully displayed. Please pay attention and drive carefully.

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Instructions

Seat belts are the primary passenger safety protection system which can protect passengers from serious injury in the event of an accident especially when used with airbags.

There are pretensioning devices for both the front and both outer rear seats of the vehicle. This kind of device provides a certain pretension force for the seat belt in the event of a serious collision. They retract part of the seat belt quickly to protect passengers reliably. At the same time, they prevent excessive restraint force of the seat belts that could cause injury to passengers.

Warning

- If the seat belt is not fastened or correctly fastened, serious injury or death may occur as a result. Always fasten your seat belt correctly.
- Do not unfasten your seat belt while your vehicle is in motion. Otherwise, serious injury may occur in the event of an accident.
- Please keep your seat belt clean, and avoid blocking the socket with foreign objects. Otherwise, the seat belt will not be able to be buckled reliably.
- Before use, please check your seat belt and its fixing mechanism carefully for damage and aging. If there is any damage, never continue using it, and replace your seat belt immediately.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts by yourself. Do not remove or install seat belts by yourself under any circumstances.
- Do not share one seat belt with another person (such as holding a child), or it may cause secondary injury to passengers in the event of an accident.
- A seat belt that is stretched and deformed during an accident has lost its safety protection feature. Even if its surface is not damaged, it shall be replaced immediately.
- Once the pretension force limiting device of the seat belt is triggered during an accident, it shall be replaced immediately. In some accidents, even if the pretension force limiting device is not triggered, it is recommended to go to the NIO Service Center for inspection and have it replaced if necessary.
- Please do not tilt your backrest too far back. Otherwise, the protective function of your seat belt will be seriously affected.

Seat Belt Unfastened Warning Light

All seats in your vehicle are equipped with seat belts.

When you, as a driver, are seated in the driver's seat (and the driver's door is closed or the brake pedal is depressed) or your vehicle is driving, if the front passenger does not fasten his/her seat belt, the Seat Belt Unfastened Warning Light on the digital instrument cluster will illuminate to remind you and the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt immediately.

When a front row seat belt is not fastened:

- If your vehicle speed is higher than 22 km/h and his/her seat belt is still not fastened, the Seat Belt Unfastened Warning Light will flash and the warning chime will sound. After his/her seat belt is fastened, the warning light and warning chime will disappear;
- If the seat belt remains unfastened, the warning chime will stop after 95 seconds, but the warning light will be steadily on.

When you, as a driver, are seated in the driver's seat (and the driver's door is closed or the brake pedal is depressed), if a rear row passenger does not fasten his/her seat belt, the corresponding Seat Belt Unfastened Warning Light on the digital instrument cluster will illuminate to remind the rear row passenger to fasten his/her seat belt immediately. The warning light will go out after the seat belt is fastened.

When a rear row seat belt is not fastened:

- If your vehicle speed is higher than 22 km/h and a rear row passenger releases his/her seat belt, the warning chime will sound at the same time when the Seat Belt Unfastened Warning Light illuminates. This warning light will go out after all seat belts are fastened.
- If the rear row seat belt remains unfastened, the warning chime will stop after 33 seconds, but the warning light will be steadily on.

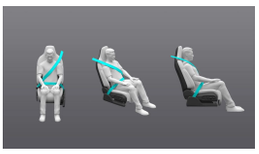
Warning

If the seat belt reminder malfunctions, do not use the seat and contact NIO immediately for inspection.

Use of Seat Belts

The correct use of seat belt is as follows:

1. Pull the seat belt tongue across the front of your body. The upper part of the seat belt shall be across your shoulder, and the lower part of the seat belt shall be across your hip. Do not put the seat belt across your neck or abdomen. Insert the tongue into the buckle for the same seat until you hear a click. Pull the seat belt to confirm that the seat belt is locked.

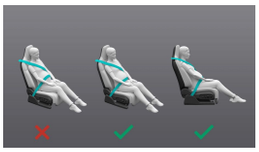
   

2. Press and hold the seat belt height adjustment button and move the seat belt up and down to adjust the seat belt height. After the seat belt reaches a comfortable height, release the adjustment button. After the height is adjusted, pull the seat belt shoulder part to confirm that the seat belt is locked.

To release the seat belt, press the red button at the buckle, and the tongue will pop out. Now the seat belt can be retracted by hand. The tongue can be rolled back automatically into the upper fixing device of the seat belt.

Warning

- Ensure that the backrest and head restraint are positioned correctly before wearing a seat belt, so that the seat belt can protect the occupant to the fullest extent possible.
- A seat belt that is either too loose or too tight can cause injury if a collision occurs.
- For a pregnant occupant, the seat belt must rest evenly across the chest and as low and flat as possible across the hips. Failure to do so can cause severe injury to both the unborn fetus and the mother if the seat belt tightens in the event of an accident.

Airbag

Airbag Instructions

Airbags are a supplementary restraint system that works with the seat belts. Airbags quickly deploy in serious accidents to protect the head and chest of passengers and reduce the severity of injury. However, they do not prevent limb injuries or scrapes and bruises. Therefore, the airbags should be used together with the seat belt to provide maximum protection.

Your vehicle is equipped with collision sensors. In case of a frontal or side collision that meets the conditions (depending on the type, angle and object of collision) for the airbag system to deploy, the airbags will deploy from their position. The gas generator inside the airbag will ignite and release gas at high pressure to blow open the cover of the airbag. Gas will fill the airbag to form a buffer protection layer that protects passengers, thereby reducing the risk of injury or death.

The vehicle airbag system includes frontal airbags and side airbags. The word “AIRBAG” is marked on the places where the airbag is placed to remind you that there is an airbag herein.

- The front airbags include the front row head airbags, which are located in the trim cover of the steering wheel and at the instrument panel on the front passenger side respectively;
- The side airbags include the front side airbags (located on both sides of the driver's seat and the outside of the front passenger seat) and the curtain airbags (located above the doors on both sides, in the ceiling area from the A-pillar to the C-pillar).

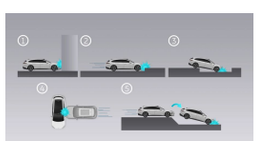
1. Driver front airbag
2. Front passenger's front airbag
3. Front seat side airbag
4. Curtain airbag
5. Front row middle airbag

Warning

- Airbags are a supplementary restraint system and cannot replace seat belts. The airbag can only maximize your safety when used in conjunction with the seat belt. Thus, all occupants should always correctly wear their seat belt and sit in the correct position.
- The driver should sit at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel, since the airbag may injure the driver when deployed with great force.
- Children must not sit in the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is enabled. In the case of an accident, the impact of the airbag when deployed may cause severe injury to children.
- Do not place any objects on the front passenger seat. These objects will enter the deployment area and be ejected if the airbag deploys in the event of emergency braking, which may injure occupants.
- The airbag system can only provide protection once. If the airbag has been deployed, you must have it replaced; during certain accidents, the airbag may not deploy. However, to ensure that the airbag system works properly, please contact NIO immediately for inspection or replacement if necessary.
- If any damage or fractures are found on the airbag cover, do not use the vehicle and contact NIO immediately.
- If the airbag system has never been deployed for a period of ten years from its production date, please visit NIO to have it replaced. A record of the airbag system's replacement needs to be kept and given to the new owner when the vehicle's ownership is transferred.
- Installing or removing airbag system components, including airbag labels, is prohibited.
- Smoke and fine powder may be produced when the airbag deploys. Even if the fine powder is nontoxic, it may still make occupants feel uncomfortable.
- When using seat covers, avoid the area around the side airbags for the front seats. Doing so may impair the protective function of the side airbags.
- Do not place any objects in the deployment area of the curtain airbags (including pillars, headliner or handles). Occupants should not lean against the doors. Doing so may result in injury if a curtain airbag deploys.
- Do not place any hard objects (including clothes hangers, fruits, or glass bottles) on the garment hooks in the vehicle. Doing so may result in injury if a curtain airbag deploys.
- Never place your feet, knees or other body parts on or near the airbag covers. Do not place or hang any objects on or near the airbag covers. Doing so may impair the functionality of the airbags and may result in injury if an airbag deploys.
- Never place, hang or install any objects on or near the instrument panel on the passenger side. Doing so may result in injury if an airbag deploys.
- Never modify the headliner of the vehicle. Doing so may impair the functionality of the curtain airbags, and result in injury if they deploy.
- Never place or hang any heavy or sharp-edged objects on the front passenger sun visor. Doing so may result in injury if the front passenger airbag deploys.
- The smoke and dust generated during the rapid airbag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation/scalds/burns, and the airbag fibers may cause skin scratches or burns.

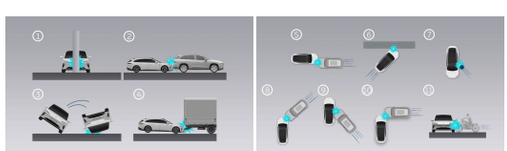
Airbag Deployment Conditions

The airbag may deploy in the following conditions:



1. High speed frontal impact with a wall or vehicle.
2. Impact with hard roadbed.
3. Falling into a deep ditch.
4. Side impact by a vehicle traveling at a high speed.
5. Leaving the road surface and then impacting it violently.

The airbags may not deploy in some collision situations, including but not limited to the following situations. Please use seat belts correctly to protect passengers.



1. Impact with a tree, column or other slender objects.
2. Rear collision from a vehicle behind.
3. Lateral roll.
4. Collision with or getting stuck under the rear of the truck in front.
5. A collision with a vehicle from the side at the nose of the vehicle.

6. A collision with a wall from the side at the nose of the vehicle.
7. Side collision with a post.
8. Side collision at the front of the vehicle at a certain angle.
9. Side collision on the body of the vehicle at a certain angle.
10. Partial side collision.
11. Partial side collision.

Airbag Warning Light

The airbag warning light indicating the airbag status is displayed on the digital instrument cluster. If this warning light is on after the digital instrument cluster is started, please stop using your vehicle and contact the NIO Service Center immediately.

Deactivating the Front Passenger Airbag

Because the airbag expands rapidly and has a large impact force when it deploys, it is safer for the front passenger to stay at least 25 cm away from the front airbag. However, if a child or a passenger with special medical needs must ride in the front row, go to the Settings interface in the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Security > Front Passenger Airbag**, and select the option to turn off the front passenger airbag. At this time, the icon appears at the top of the center display to remind you that the front passenger airbag has been disabled to prevent the front passenger airbag from causing serious injury to the special front passenger.

Safety Measures after Airbag Deployment

When the vehicle has a collision and the airbags deploy, the vehicle will automatically implement some safety measures to protect the occupants in the vehicle:

- Unlock all doors to ensure that passengers in the vehicle or rescue personnel can open the doors.
- Turn on the hazard warning light to show the vehicle position and warn vehicles coming from behind.
- Cut off the high-voltage power supply to protect occupants.
- Open the windows to prevent occupants from being trapped if the vehicle falls into water.
- Turn off the steering wheel and seat memory features to avoid being adjusted to a position where the driver is trapped.
- Turn on the interior reading lights in the vehicle to facilitate rescue at night.

Child Locks

The child locks are deactivated by default. They need to be set up to be activated. Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Doors** to see the settings for the child locks.

Manually Activate and Deactivate Door/Window Child Locks

Tap **Rear Door/Window Child Locks**. **ON** represents that this feature is activated, and **OFF** represents that this feature is deactivated.

If the child lock of the corresponding door/window fails to be activated or deactivated, a pop-up reminder will appear on the center display. Repeat the above procedure until it is successful.

Caution

- When Child Protection Locks are on, please do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. Doing so may result in injury or death.
- After turning on Child Protection Locks, please check their status again.

Child Safety Seat

When a child under 12 years old or with a height less than 1.5 meters rides in your vehicle, always install a child safety seat or booster cushion. Please have the child sit in the child safety seat or booster cushion instead of holding him or letting him sit on an adult's lap to fully protect the child.

Only child safety seats that are approved for children and comply with relevant regulations or standards are allowed to be used. Check the markings on the child safety seat when selecting a child safety seat. When installing and using a child safety seat, follow the relevant laws and regulations, the instructions of the child safety seat manufacturer and the instructions on the safety of children in this user manual.

Important Instructions for Using Child Safety Seats

Proper use of child safety seats will greatly reduce the risk of injury to children and reduce the severity of injury in accidents. Please be aware of the following when using child safety seats:

- We advise not to install a child safety seat in the middle seat of the rear row.
- When installing a seat belt type child safety seat in the front passenger seat, adjust the front passenger seat to its highest position.
- Children must use child safety seats, maintain a correct posture and have their seat belts fastened during their ride.

- Never let your child ride without protection.
- One child safety seat cannot be shared by more than one child.
- Do not ride with a child in your arms.
- Hard or sharp objects may injure a child in an accident. Keep them away from the child safety seat.
- If a rearward-facing child safety seat is installed in the rear seat of your vehicle, it is necessary to adjust the corresponding front seat forward as appropriate. If a forward-facing child safety seat is installed on the rear seat of your vehicle, it may be necessary to adjust the height of the seat headrest.
- Children need to be supervised by adults when sitting in child safety seats. Never leave children alone in your vehicle.
- Do not let children stand in your vehicle or kneel on the seat during driving. A standing or kneeling child could be thrown forward during an accident, which may lead to injury or death to the child or another passenger.
- The instructions of the child safety seat manufacturer on the correct use of the seat belt must be observed. Proper fastening of seat belts can make full use of the protection afforded by the child safety seat.
- In case of collision or emergency braking, a child safety seat that is not properly installed and fixed in place could move and injure other passengers in your vehicle. Therefore, even when the child safety seat is not in use, it must also be properly installed and secured in your vehicle.
- When a child is riding in the child safety seat, do not let him lean his head or body against the door, the side of the seat or the pillar, or below the roof beam. In case of an accident, side airbags or curtain airbags will deploy in those areas, increasing the risk of injury to the child.

Child Safety Seat Grouping

Only a child safety seat that is approved and suitable for the child is allowed to be used. Children taller than 1.5 meters can use the vehicle seat belts as would an adult. If a child safety seat needs to be used, it must comply with relevant regulations or standards.

Table 1. CRS Table

Seat position	Driver	1 st row passenger		2 nd row left	2 nd row middle	2 nd row right
		Passenger Airbag OFF	Passenger Airbag ON			
Seating position suitable for universal belts (yes/no)	N/A	Yes (*a)	No	Yes	Yes (*b)	Yes
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	N/A	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)*	N/A	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)*	N/A	No	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F1/F2X/F2/F3)*	N/A	No	No	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster cushion fixture (B2/B3)*	N/A	No	No	B2/B3	No	B2/B3
Suitable for support leg	N/A	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes

Note:

*The child seat category is defined according to ECE R16/R44/R129, you can find the category of child seat on it's specification. The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.

(a) If it is absolutely necessary for you to install a child seat to the front passenger seat, be sure to turn passenger airbag off. Adjust front passenger seat to the highest position before installing universal CRS on it.

(b) It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support base or with a support leg on the middle seat of the 2 nd row.

Table 2. Recommended Child Restraints by NIO

Group	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0 & 0+	Besafe	iZi Combi X4 ISOfix	ISOFIX mounted with support leg, rearward-facing
Up to 13 kg			
I			
9-18 kg			
II	Cybex	SolutionZ i-Fix	ISOFIX with seat belt, forward-facing
15-25 kg			
III	Ossan	UP	With seatbelt, forward-facing
22-36 kg			

NIO recommend to put your kids in corresponding CRS on the 2 nd row outer seating position, and CRS should be mounted to vehicle with ISOFIX, support leg or seatbelt. In order to have the best protection for your younger kids, kids weight under 18kg please use recommended rearward-facing CRS.

Q6 recommended CRS: Cybex Solution Z i-Fix

Q10 recommended CRS: Osann Up

Selection of Child Safety Seat

There is a warning label for the front row airbag on the sun visor on the front passenger side.

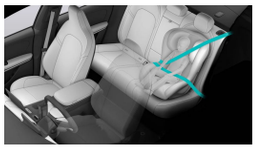
To place a child safety seat in the front row seat, you need to disable the front passenger airbag. Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Security > Front Passenger Airbag**, and turn off the front passenger airbag. After doing so, the icon appears at the top of the center display to remind you that the front passenger airbag is disabled.

Children should use a child safety seat or seat belt in either outer rear seat according to the age, height and weight of the child:

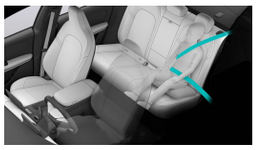
- Reclining child safety seats should be used for infants weighing less than 13 kg. They should be installed rearwards in rear seats whenever possible.

- Child safety seats with safety platforms or five-point seat belts should be used for children with a weight of 9-18 kg. It is recommended to install them rearwards in rear seats.

- Forward-facing child safety seats should be used for children with a weight of 15-25 kg. They should be installed in rear seats in coordination with seat belts.

- Child booster cushions should be used for children with a weight of 22-36 kg and a height less than 1.5 meters. They should be installed in rear seats in coordination with seat belts.

Warning

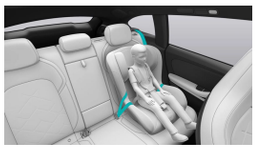
The upper belt must lay flat across the shoulder and chest, and never lay across the neck; the lower belt must lay flat across the pelvis, and never lay across the abdomen.

Installation of Child Safety Seat

Before installing a child safety seat, please read the instructions for the child safety seat carefully to confirm that it can be installed in your vehicle. If the vehicle seat belt or ISOFIX connection can be used to fix the child safety seat according to the installation method of the child safety seat, it is recommended to use the ISOFIX connection preferentially.

- Securing with Vehicle Seat Belt

  Install the child safety seat in the rear seat, put the vehicle seat belt through the child safety seat and insert the tongue into the buckle. Make sure that the seat belt is straight, not twisted. Pull the seat belt to confirm that it cannot be pulled out.

- Securing with ISOFIX Connection

  Both outer rear seats in your vehicle are equipped with ISOFIX connections suitable for installing child safety seats. The ISOFIX connection is hidden under the cover between the seat back and the seat cushion. After opening the cover, insert it into the gap between the seat back and the cushion, and then use the ISOFIX connection to install the child safety seat.

  1. Lift the cover between the seat back and the seat cushion, and insert the lower part of the child safety seat into the hook in the ISOFIX connection until you hear a click.

  2. Pass the upper fixing belt of the child safety seat under the seat headrest and connect it with the hook in the safety device at the back of the rear seat.

  3. Pull the child safety seat hard to check whether it is firmly installed.

Warning

- The ISOFIX attachment points are designed solely for child safety seats with the ISOFIX system. To avoid injury, never secure other objects to ISOFIX.
- Always follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions and this manual when installing and removing a child safety seat. Improper usage can result in injury to your child or other passengers.

Multi Collision Braking (MCB)

Multi Collision Braking (MCB) comes standard on ET5 Touring. In certain types of collisions, the vehicle's brakes are applied to help prevent or mitigate a secondary collision.

In order to avoid or mitigate a secondary collision, the system applies the brakes automatically to bring the vehicle to a stop. The brake lights and hazard warning flashers will be activated and the flashers will remain on after the vehicle has come to a standstill. The electrical parking brake will then be applied automatically.

In a situation where stopping the vehicle may not be desirable, you can override this operation by depressing the accelerator pedal.

This feature can only operate when the braking system is sufficiently intact after the collision.

Pet Mode

When the vehicle is put in Park, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Pet Mode** to turn on the pet mode. You can keep your pets in your vehicle when necessary. After you lock your vehicle and leave, your vehicle will maintain an appropriate temperature to ensure the safety of your pets and vehicle. You can manually turn off the Pet Mode on the center display or in your mobile App when necessary.

After you set the Pet Mode to ON, when you successfully lock your vehicle, the air conditioning air volume, the ventilation mode and the internal and external circulation will enter automatic mode (the temperature in your vehicle is 22 °C by default and can be manually set). The center display will display the cabin temperature and a prompt stating that pets have been intentionally left in the vehicle. The brightness of the instrument panel display will be adjusted to the minimum, and the brightness of the center display will be adjusted to 50%. At this time, the NOMI voice wake-up feature will be disabled, the window adjustment button will not be available, and the Child-Protection Lock will be activated for the rear doors and windows to ensure the safety of your pets and vehicle.

The Pet Mode is disabled by default before each drive, and once enabled, it can maintain the previous state even if the account is switched.

Caution

- Pet Mode is only for the temporary placement of pets. Please do not leave children alone in your vehicle.
- It is not possible to activate Pet Mode simultaneously with Power-Keep Mode or Camping Mode.
- After Pet Mode is activated, Smart Guardian and Real-Time Surround View are temporarily unavailable. They can be reactivated after Pet Mode is exited and your vehicle is locked.
- After Pet Mode is activated, system update and gear shifting operations cannot be performed for your vehicle.
- Pet Mode can only be activated when your vehicle is in Park gear and all four doors are closed. If your vehicle is in Neutral gear, Pet Mode cannot be activated.
- After Pet Mode is activated, you will be prompted with a message that your pets are in your vehicle through your mobile App every two hours. If the current remainder range of your vehicle is less than 60 kilometers and it is not being charged, you will be prompted by a message; if the current remainder range of your vehicle is less than 10 kilometers, Pet Mode will be automatically exited and the windows will be opened to enter Ajar Mode to protect your pets.
- If the high-voltage system or climate control system of your vehicle is abnormal, Pet Mode will be automatically exited and the windows will be opened to enter Ajar Mode to protect your pets.

Power-Keep Mode

When the vehicle is put in Park, go to the Settings interface from the left side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Power-Keep Mode** to turn on walk-away hold mode. When you need to leave the vehicle temporarily (such as when buying coffee or breakfast, etc.), you can keep the cabin in a comfortable state so that you can have a comfortable ride when you come back. You can manually turn off the Power-Keep Mode on the center display or in the when needed.

When the Power-Keep Mode is set, after you have locked up the vehicle, the air conditioning settings, seat heating, seat ventilation, seat massage and wiper status will all remain unchanged when you leave the vehicle. You can set up the duration for the Power-Keep Mode and lighting. While the vehicle is in this mode, NOMI voice wake-up is disabled. After reaching the set duration time, it will be automatically disabled.

The Power-Keep Mode is disabled by default before each drive, and once enabled, it can maintain the previous state even if the account is switched.

Caution

- Power-Keep Mode is only designed to maintain a comfortable interior climate during a temporary walk-away. Do not leave children and pets alone in your vehicle.
- It is not possible to activate Power-Keep Mode simultaneously with Pet Mode or Camping Mode.
- After Power-Keep Mode is activated, Smart Guardian and Real-Time Surround View are temporarily unavailable. They can be reactivated after Power-Keep Mode is exited and your vehicle is locked.
- Power-Keep Mode can only be activated when your vehicle is in Park gear. If your vehicle is in Neutral gear, Power-Keep Mode cannot be activated.
- After Power-Keep Mode is activated, system update and gear shifting operations cannot be performed for your vehicle.
- If the current remainder range of your vehicle is less than 60 kilometers and it is not being charged, you will be prompted by a message; if the current remainder range of your vehicle is less than 10 kilometers, Power-Keep Mode will be automatically exited.
- If the high-voltage system or climate control system of your vehicle is abnormal, Power-Keep Mode will be automatically exited.

Camping Mode

When the vehicle is put in Park, go to the Settings interface on the left side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Camping Mode** to turn on the camping mode. When you need to use the in-car power supply for a long time (e.g. when camping outdoors), a safe and comfortable camping experience will be achieved

You can manually turn off the Camping Mode on the center display or in the mobile App when needed.

When Camping Mode is on, the air conditioning is turned on, with front and rear row temperature at 25°C by default, the air circulation is turned on, the air purification is adjusted to Silent mode, at the same time, all screens inside the car go off according to the screen off delay time you set, the interior lighting and doors/windows are adjusted according to the setting options, and the Hands-Free Liftgate feature is automatically turned off. NOMI enters Do Not Disturb mode at the same time.

The Camping Mode is disabled by default before each drive, and once enabled, it can maintain the previous state even if the account is switched.

Caution

- It is not possible to activate Camping Mode simultaneously with Pet Mode or Power-Keep Mode.
- Camping Mode can only be activated when your vehicle is in Park gear. If your vehicle is in Neutral gear, Camping Mode cannot be activated.
- After Camping Mode is activated, Smart Guardian and Real-Time Surround View are temporarily unavailable. They can be reactivated after Camping Mode is exited and your vehicle is locked.
- After Camping Mode is activated, system update and gear shifting operations cannot be performed for your vehicle, and the features of Walk Up Unlock and Walk Away Lock will be temporarily turned off. They will be resumed after exiting the camping mode. In this mode, it is recommended to turn on the air conditioner to maintain air circulation.
- If the current remainder range of your vehicle is less than 60 kilometers and it is not being charged, you will be prompted by a message; if the current remainder range of your vehicle is less than 10 kilometers, Camping Mode will be automatically exited and the windows will be opened to enter Ajar Mode.
- When Camping Mode is on and the car is locked from inside, if someone opens the door from inside and leaves the car, the center display in the car will light up, and a message will be displayed to remind anyone left in the car of the vehicle's unlocked status.
- If the high-voltage system or climate control system of your vehicle is abnormal, Camping Mode will be automatically exited and the windows will be opened to enter Ajar Mode.
- When Camping Mode is on, the Hands-Free Liftgate feature will be automatically turned off.

Child Presence Detection (CPD)

As an auxiliary feature for the safety of children, Child Presence Detection (CPD) can effectively remind users when children are left alone in the vehicle, and gives a high-frequency reminder for a short period of time, reducing the likelihood of incidents caused by users forgetting their children.

The in-vehicle camera and other sensors will detect the presence of children after the user locks the vehicle. If any child is left alone in the vehicle, it will remind the user by means of hazard warning flasher, ringer and alerts, mobile App messages, etc.

You can enable/disable this feature in **Settings > Security > Child Presence Detection (CPD)**. When this feature is enabled, in the event of a hardware failure (including in-vehicle camera, radar or air conditioning, etc.), the status icon will be displayed at the top of the center display, and corresponding prompts will be displayed when the icon is tapped; in the events such as when the camera is covered, the status icon will be displayed at the top of the center display, and corresponding prompts will be displayed when the icon is tapped.

Caution

- As an auxiliary safety function, Child Presence Detection (CPD) is mainly used for detecting and reminding you that children have been left behind in the rear row. Since there is a possibility that it will fail to detect or mis-detect the presence of children, it cannot be solely used for child protection. It is not recommended that you leave children alone in your vehicle.
- Please return to the vehicle as soon as possible to take care of the children after receiving notifications via SMS or the mobile app, so as to make sure that the children are safe in the vehicle.

Alcohol Interlock

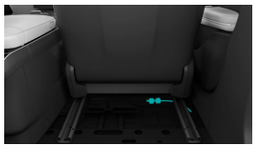
The purpose of alcohol interlocks is to enhance traffic safety by preventing anyone with alcohol concentration exceeding a set limit value from driving a motor vehicle.

Before you install the interlock, the following safety risks should be considered:

- With your vehicle in the P gear, turn off the high-voltage power supply (to cut off the high-voltage circuit, disconnect the emergency high-voltage cutoff plug located under the hood near the coolant reservoir, and then disconnect the cable connected to the negative terminal of the 12V battery).
- The responsibility for the safe installation will remain on the alcohol interlock installer.

The alcohol interlock electrical plug is located below the front right seat. The alcohol interlock is connected as follows:

1. Move the right seat to its foremost top position.
2. Lift the carpet and the alcohol interlock cover, and take out the electrical plug of the alcohol interlock.



3. Connect the alcohol interlock electrical plug and the alcohol interlock handset.
4. Mount the alcohol interlock handset and the alcohol interlock control unit under the console box.

Note

After installing the alcohol interlock, no visual or audible indication will be given from the vehicle, but the alcohol interlock handset will show the operation instructions.

Warning

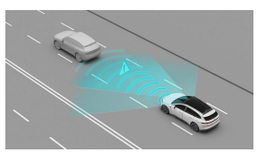
Do not remove the alcohol interlock by yourself. If you need to remove the alcohol interlock, please contact the NIO Service Center.

The alcohol interlock connection schematics are as follows:

	Feature	*Cable or pin*	*Position of connection*
1	Battery feed (KL30), uninterrupted For nominal 12 V, the alcohol interlock requires	Gray Cable Pin 1 0.5 mm²	In Instrument Electrical Center box under front passenger foot pedal
2	Ground	Black Cable Pin 2 0.5 mm²	Under driver's seat for Left Driver and under front passenger seat for Right Driver
3c	Data bus connection Connection to an internal data bus of the vehicle for information exchange between the vehicle and the alcohol interlock.	White-Red Cable Pin 4 0.35mm²	Under driver's seat for Right Driver and under front passenger seat for Left Driver

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

Forward Collision Warning will emit visual, audible and tactile alerts if the system determines that there is a potential risk of collision between your vehicle and a vehicle in front.



For vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you that are moving in the same direction, the Forward Collision Warning operates at speeds no lower than about 4 km/h.

Warning

- The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) is for reference only and cannot replace your attention and judgment.
- The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) is only applicable to the prevention of frontal collisions, and will not work when the vehicle is in reverse gear.
- As a driving assist feature, the Forward Collision Warning (FCW) can neither respond to all traffic, weather or road conditions, nor detect vehicles in all cases. It may become ineffective, inappropriate or untimely due to a number of factors.
- You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road environment. Do not rely on the judgment of the Forward Collision Warning (FCW). Otherwise, personal injury or vehicle damage may occur.
- For safety reasons, do not intentionally drive towards vehicles to test the Forward Collision Warning (FCW) feature. When danger is found, do not wait for the Forward Collision Warning (FCW) to trigger before taking action.
- If the risk of a collision further increases, Autonomous Emergency Brake (AEB) will intervene regardless of whether the driver applies the brake or not.
- You always bear the ultimate responsibility for safe driving and shall abide by the current traffic laws and regulations.

Enter Settings from the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Forward Collision Warning** to enable or disable this feature.

Enter Settings from the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Warning Timing** to set the warning timing for this feature.

When Forward Collision Warning is triggered, the dynamic environment simulation will display a visual alert.

When the Forward Collision Warning is triggered, the vehicle will sound an auditory alarm reminding you to keep your distance from the lead vehicle.

Warning

When Forward Collision Warning is disabled, your vehicle will not warn you of a possible collision. It is not suggested to turn it off.

This feature will be turned on when the vehicle's system restarts.

Precautions and Restrictions

Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended due to cameradetection failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The positions of the cameras are changed.
- The cameras are obstructed or stained.
- Visibility is poor in dim environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in atunnel, resulting in impaired recognition.
- Sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered by direct sunlight or other light sources.
- In rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead that falls onto your vehicle
- The cameras are obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt,wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.
- The camera cannot focus or malfunctions.

Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended due to LiDAR sensor detection failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The position of the LiDAR sensor is changed.
- In rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- The sensing performance is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front.
- The vehicle is driving on wet roads or roads with water.
- The window of the LiDAR sensor is obstructed by water, dust, paint protection film, wrap film, small scratches, grease, dirt, frost, snow, etc.
- The LiDAR sensor is too hot due to prolonged exposure of the vehicle to the sun.
- False warnings may be generated due to traffic signs and anti-collision buckets on expressways and elevated roads.

Only qualified vehicles moving in the same direction as your vehicle will trigger Forward Collision Warning. Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers (traffic cones, etc.)
- Other non-vehicle objects

Caution

- This feature cannot ensure that all special-shaped vehicles can be identified in all conditions. You need to pay extra attention, especially at night. Special-shaped vehicles may include tricycles, vehicles with a damaged taillight, unclear rear contour, or obstructed rear body, irregular-shaped vehicles, vehicles with a rear body lower than a certain height, or unloaded transporters for carrying vehicles.
- This feature may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.
- This feature may be falsely triggered when the vehicle needs to be driven onto special places such as a car hauler or a wrecker.

Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended if the target is notright in front in some situations, include but are not limited to:

- It does not respond to targets that are in the blind zone of the sensors, including the blind zones at the corner, on the side, or at the rear of the vehicle.
- The target may be incorrectly selected or missed when the vehicle is approaching or navigating a curve.
- The target may be lost or the distance to the target may be misjudged when the vehicle is on a slope.
- When only a part of the vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of you (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), the target may not be identified in time.
- When your vehicle suddenly cuts to the back of a vehicle in front, or when other vehicles abruptly cut into or out of the front of your vehicle, the target may not be identified in time.

Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended due to special or complicated road conditions, including but not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, electric bicycles, or animals.
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, freeway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.

Warning

Forward Collision Warning may not provide a warning in certain situations, including but not limited to:

- The driver is already applying the brakes.

- The driver fully or suddenly presses the accelerator pedal.
- The driver turns the steering wheel sharply.

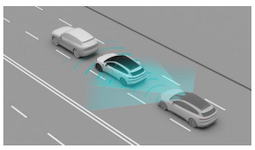
Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions do not exhaust all the situations that may affect the proper operation of Forward Collision Warning. Forward Collision Warning may be affected by many factors. To avoid safety accidents, be sure to always pay attention to traffic, road and vehicle conditions and drive with caution.

Automatic Emergency Brake (AEB)

When the system determines that a frontal collision with a vehicle in front is unavoidable, it will apply the brakes to reduce the speed and minimize the impact System of rear-end collision.



When Automatic Emergency Brake has been triggered, the vehicle speed will be reduced by up to 60 km/h to mitigate the impact of a possible collision. For example, if Automatic Emergency Brake is triggered at a speed of 90 km/h, the brakes will be released after the vehicle speed is reduced to 30 km/h.

When Automatic Emergency Brake is triggered, the dynamic environment simulation will display a visual alert, the brake pedal will move downward abruptly, and the brake light will turn on.

Caution

The recognition of pedestrians behind the vehicle as well as braking is still in the continuous optimization stage. This feature cannot guarantee the recognition of pedestrians in all situations.

Warning

As a driving assist feature, Autonomous Emergency Brake cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather, and road conditions and cannot detect vehicles in all situations. Several factors can cause an invalid, inappropriate, or untimely warning.

You must pay attention to the traffic and road conditions at all times. Never depend on Autonomous Emergency Brake to avoid collisions or reduce the impact of a collision. Doing so can cause personal injury or vehicle damage. For safety reasons, never test the use of Autonomous Emergency Brake when facing the direction of other vehicles, cyclists, or pedestrians. If you come across a dangerous situation, never wait for Autonomous Emergency Brake to intervene before taking action. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Warning

Autonomous Emergency Brake may apply short and sharp braking to reduce the risk of a potential collision, which may not be in line with your normal driving habit and may make you feel uncomfortable.

Enter Settings from the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Autonomous Emergency Brake** to enable or disable this feature.

Warning

When Autonomous Emergency Brake is disabled, your vehicle will not automatically apply the brakes even if a potential frontal collision is detected. It is not suggested to turn it off.

This feature will be turned on when the vehicle's system restarts.

Precautions and Restrictions

The camera system may fail to recognize obstacles and thus Automatic Emergency Brake may fail to operate as intended in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The positions of the cameras are changed.
- The cameras are obstructed or stained.
- Visibility is poor in dim environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel, resulting in impaired recognition.
- Sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The view of the cameras is interfered by large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered by direct sunlight or other light sources.
- In rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- When exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust is kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The cameras are obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.
- The camera cannot focus or malfunctions.

The LiDAR sensor may fail to recognize obstacles and thus Automatic Emergency Brake may fail to operate as intended in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The position of the LiDAR sensor is changed.
- In rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Exhaust fumes, spray, snow or dust from the vehicle ahead can cause poor detection.
- The vehicle is driving on wet or waterlogged roads.

- The window of the LiDAR sensor is obstructed by water, dust, paint protection film, wrap film, small scratches, grease, dirt, frost, snow, etc.
- The LiDAR sensor overheated due to extended exposure of the vehicle to the sunlight.
- Due to the limitations of LiDAR characteristics, in rare special cases, false alarms may occur for traffic signs and high-speed anti-collision barrels in high-speed and elevated sections of road

Autonomous Emergency Brake will only respond to vehicles that satisfy the conditions in the same direction. Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers (traffic cones, etc.)
- Other non-vehicle objects

Caution

- This feature cannot ensure that all special-shaped vehicles can be identified in all conditions. You need to pay extra attention, especially at night. Special-shaped vehicles may include tricycles, vehicles with a damaged taillight, unclear rear contour, or obstructed rear body, irregular-shaped vehicles, vehicles with a rear body lower than a certain height, or unloaded transporters for carrying vehicles.
- This feature may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.
- This feature may be falsely triggered when the vehicle needs to be driven onto special places such as a car hauler or a wrecker.

Vehicle targets may prevent the Autonomous Emergency Brake (AEB) from operating as expected in the following situations, which include but are not limited to:

- The Autonomous Emergency Brake will not respond to targets in blind spots of the sensor, such as those in blind spots at the corners, sides and back of the vehicle.
- It may wrongly select or miss targets when approaching or crossing a turn in the road.
- When going uphill, it may miss a target or misjudge the distance to the target.
- When only part of the body of a vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of your vehicle (especially when it's a larger vehicle cutting in, like a bus, truck, etc.), it may not be able to recognize it in time.
- When your vehicle abruptly cuts into the rear of the vehicle ahead, or another vehicle abruptly cuts into or out of the front of your vehicle, it may not be able to recognize it in time.
- When the lead vehicle is positioned at a large angle to this vehicle, it may not be able to be recognized in time.
- When only part of the body of the lead vehicle overlaps with this vehicle, that vehicle may not be recognized in time.
- Situations such as during the short amount of time after the power-on, when the vehicle is in the Park gear, and when the seat belt is unfastened, etc.

The performance of Automatic Emergency Brake in reducing the impact of a collision may be affected due to special or complex road conditions, including but not limited to:

- Waterlogged roads, muddy roads, potholes, ice- and snow-covered roads, roads with speed bumps, roads with obstacles.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, electric bicycles, or animals.
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, freeway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill and downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.unnel entrances and exits

Caution

The braking distance increases on slippery roads. If Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System, and Electronic Stability Program are triggered, the performance of Automatic Emergency Brake in reducing the impact of a collision may be impaired.

Warning

The brake pedal moves downward abruptly during Automatic braking events. Do not place any objects under the brake pedal. Doing so can impede the ability of the brake pedal to move freely.

Warning

Automatic Emergency Brake is not a substitute for maintaining a safe following distance between you and the vehicle in front. Do not stay too close to vehicles in front of you and avoid driving aggressively.

Warning

Automatic Emergency Brake (AEB) is mainly used to reduce the impact of a frontal collision.

Warning

Automatic Emergency Brake may not apply the brakes or may stop applying the brakes in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The driver fully or suddenly presses the accelerator pedal.
- The driver turns the steering wheel sharply.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver's door is not closed.
- Automatic Emergency Brake has been triggered and cannot be triggered again within roughly 30 seconds.
- No vehicle is detected in front of the vehicle.

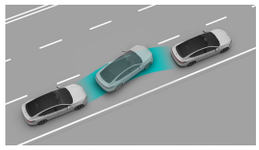
Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions do not exhaust all the situations that may affect the proper operation of Automatic Emergency Brake. Automatic Emergency Brake may be affected by many factors. To avoid safety accidents, be sure to always pay attention to traffic, road and vehicle conditions and drive with caution.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

Lane Departure Warning helps to reduce the risk of lane departure by reminding you with appropriate visual and audio alerts and steering wheel vibration when your vehicle is drifting into an adjacent lane or crossing the lane line.



Warning

Lane Departure Warning may fail to detect the curb. Please always remain cautious when driving and keep your vehicle in the lane.

Warning

As a driving assist feature, Lane Departure Warning cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. Lane Keeping Assist is only a supplement to, and does not function as a substitute for, your visual observation.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Lane Keeping Assist if it is safe. You should always be ready to take over when you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or vehicle are not suitable for enabling Lane Departure Warning, or there are other unsafe factors. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely in the lane and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Enabling and Disabling Lane Departure Warning

Enter Settings from the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assist > Lane Departure Warning and Assist** to enable or disable the feature.

After enabling Lane Departure Warning, you can choose the warning type and sensitivity:

- Warning type:
  - Sound: Audible warning
  - Vibration: Steering wheel vibration warning
  - Sound + Vibration: Audible and steering wheel vibration warnings
- Sensitivity:
  - Low: Lower sensitivity to lane departures
  - Medium: Normal sensitivity to lane departures
  - High: Higher sensitivity to lane departures

Operating conditions for Lane Departure Warning:

- Driving speed of 50-180 km/h.
- The vehicle is driving without abrupt acceleration, deceleration, or swerving.
- The vehicle is in the center of the lane, not driving on the lane line.
- At least one lane line is clear.
- The trifocal camera is operating normally with a clear view.
- All components of Lane Departure Warning are operating correctly.
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, including:
  - The driver is seated.
  - The driver has fastened the seat belt.
  - All doors are closed.
  - The vehicle is in DRIVE.
  - Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not triggered.
  - The Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not manually disabled.

Caution

When the turn signal is on, Lane Keeping Assist does not provide any reminders or take control if your vehicle deviates towards the corresponding side.

Displays on the Digital Instrument Cluster

1. Lane Departure Warning status icon
2. Lane lines

- Icon not shown: LDW is not enabled
- Icon in gray: Lane Departure Warning is enabled but not activated

- Icon and lane lines in white: Lane Departure Warning is activated

- Icon and one lane line in red: Lane departure risk on the corresponding side

Caution

The information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

Precautions and Restrictions

Lane Departure Warning may fail to function as intended or be disabled automatically in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The vehicle is navigating sharp curves, such as on expressway ramps.
- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The road section has no lane lines, such as non-standard roads, intersections, or construction areas.
- The road section has special lane lines, such as deceleration lines or diversion lines.
- Lane lines are not clearly divided, such as lane lines merging or diverting, expressway ramps, urban intersections, or left-turn waiting areas.
- There are edges or other high-contrast lines on the road instead of lane lines, such as road joints or curbs.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.

Lane Departure Warning may fail to function as intended or be disabled automatically due to camera recognition failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

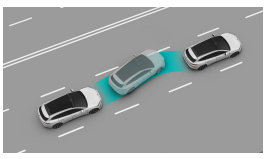
- The positions of the cameras are changed.
- The cameras are obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the cameras is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the cameras is interfered by sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The view of the cameras is interfered by large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the cameras is interfered by direct light.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.

We do not recommend using Lane Departure Warning in some special or complicated road conditions as it may fail to function as intended or be disabled automatically. Such conditions include but are not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, or animals on the road.
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, expressway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Narrow roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.
- Non-standard roads.
- Roads without center medians.

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

Lane Keeping Assist will temporarily assist the driver in bringing the vehicle back into the correct lane while emitting visual, audible, or steering wheel vibration alert when the vehicle unintentionally drifts into an adjacent lane or tends to do so.



Lane Keeping Assist includes:

- Alert Only: When the moving vehicle has a non-autonomous tendency to deviate to the adjacent lane, or is about to cross the lane marking, the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) can provide appropriate visual, auditory and steering wheel vibration alerts.
- Alert and Lane Keeping Assist: When the moving vehicle has a non-autonomous tendency to deviate to the adjacent lane, or is about to cross the lane marking, the Lane Keeping Assist will apply a slight corrective Steer Assist to the steering wheel to reduce the possibility of the vehicle deviating from the lane. Lane Keeping Assist emits visual and audio alerts when your vehicle deviates too much from the center of the lane.

Warning

Lane Keeping Assist can only provide limited steering assist and cannot control the vehicle's speed.

Lane Keeping Assist is unable to constantly control the steering. Therefore, it cannot always keep the vehicle centered in the lane.

Warning

Lane Keeping Assist has limited steering torque which can only provide a slight steering assist and cannot fully guarantee the prevention of lane departure. Do not rely solely on Lane Keeping Assist to steer. You should always be prepared to take over steering, especially when driving on roads with curves.

Please take over steering immediately when cornering, turning around, or driving on winding roads or roads with sharp curves.

Warning

As a driving assist feature, Lane Keeping Assist cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Lane Keeping Assist is only a supplement to, and does not function as a substitute for, your visual observation. You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Lane Keeping Assist if it is safe.

You should always be ready to take over when you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or the vehicle are not suitable for enabling Lane Keeping Assist, or there are other unsafe factors.

You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely in the lane and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Warning

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on Lane Keeping Assist
- Using Lane Keeping Assist in bad weather conditions
- Using Lane Keeping Assist on non-standardized roads
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road

Enabling and Disabling the Lane Keeping Assist System

Enter Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Lane Departure Warning and Assist** to enable or disable this feature.

When enabled, you can select the assist levels, alerting methods and sensitivity:

- Assist level
  - Alert Only: only provides an alert feature
  - Alert and Lane Correction: provides an alert and a slight Steer Assist
- Alert methods:
  - When it is set to "Alert Only", the alert modes include: image, image + sound, image + vibration, image + sound + vibration.
  - When it is set to "Alert and Lane Correction", the alert methods cannot be set and the default option is image + sound.
- Sensitivity:
  - Low: gives an alert later than normal sensitivity under the same conditions
  - Medium: normal sensitivity
  - High: gives an alert earlier than normal sensitivity under the same conditions

Caution

Please set the warning type and sensitivity with caution to ensure that such settings are in line with your driving habits.

Caution

Enabling the Lane Departure Warning and Assist on the central display does not mean that the function has been activated. Functions can only be activated automatically when the operating conditions are satisfied.

When the Lane Departure Warning and Assistance function is disabled, the vehicle will neither assist when it comes to remaining in the driving lane, nor offer a warning when lane departure occurs. Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) will be disabled too.

The steering wheel will turn when the Lane Departure Warning and Assistance function controls the direction.

You can turn the steering wheel to take control of the vehicle, and then the direction of the vehicle will be controlled by you.

Operating conditions for the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system:

- Your vehicle speed is about 50-180 km/h
- Your vehicle drives normally without suddenly accelerating, decelerating or steering
- Your vehicle is in the center of its lane and does not drive on the lane marking
- The lane markings on at least one side are clear
- The high-definition camera features normally and provides clear vision
- No components of the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system are faulty
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, such as:
  - The driver is seated
  - Your vehicle is in gear position D
  - Anti-lock brake system, traction control system and vehicle stability control system are not triggered
  - The traction control system and vehicle stability control system are not manually disabled

Caution

When the turn signal is active, Lane Keeping Assist does not provide any reminders or take control if your vehicle deviates towards the corresponding side.

Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD)

1. Status icon of the Lane Keeping Assist system
    - No icon: Not enabled
    - Gray icon: Standby status
    - White lane marking: The lane marking on the corresponding side has been detected
    - Yellow lane marking: Level 1 lane departure warning
    - Red lane marking: Level 2 lane departure warning
2. Lane marking display

- No status icon: The Lane Keeping Assist system is not enabled.
- The status icon is gray: The Lane Keeping Assist system is enabled, in standby status, and not activated yet

- The status icon and the central lane marking are white: The Lane Keeping Assist system is active.

- The status icon and one side of the central lane marking is red:

    - When Alert Only is selected, it indicates that there is a risk of accidental departure from the lane on the corresponding side
    - When Alert and Lane Keeping is selected, it indicates that the vehicle has deviated from the lane unexpectedly, and the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) is no longer able to prevent the vehicle from deviating from the lane through a slight Steer Assist to correct lanes.
- The status icon and one side of the central lane marking are yellow: Only occurs when Alert and Lane Correction is selected. It indicates that the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) is providing a certain Steer Assist to correct lanes at the corresponding side to reduce the possibility of the vehicle deviating from the lane.

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Precautions and Restrictions

Lane Keeping Assist may fail to function as intended or be disabled automatically in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The vehicle is navigating sharp curves, such as on expressway ramps.
- The lane markings are not clear, worn, missing, interweaving, or shaded by other vehicles or buildings or landscapes
- Passing through road sections without lane markings, such as non-standard roads, intersections and construction areas
- Passing through road sections with special lane markings, such as speed reduction markings and channelizing-line markings
- Passing through areas with unclear lane division, such as areas with merging or dividing lane markings, high-speed ramp crossings, urban intersection zones and left turn waiting zones
- There are edges or other high-contrast lines on roads instead of lane markings, such as pavement joints and curbs
- Lane markings cannot be recognized or are not recognized correctly due to height change, such as on the uphill and downhill
- Lane markings cannot be recognized or are not recognized correctly due to light, such as reflection of lane markings caused by strong light, poor visibility or insufficient light caused by bad weather and or at night
- The distance between lane markings on both sides is too wide or too narrow

The following situations may prevent the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system from operating as expected or cause it to automatically exit due to a camera recognition disorder, which include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of camera
- Blocked or dirty camera
- Limited recognition at night
- Dark surroundings, such as at dawn, dusk, night, in tunnels
- Sudden changes in ambient brightness, such as tunnel entrances or exits
- Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles
- Camera directly exposed to light
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead that falls onto your vehicle

- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, wiper, ice, snow, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera
- Wet roads

It is not recommended to use the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system in special or complex road conditions, as that may prevent the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system from operating as expected or cause it to automatically exit, which include but are not limited to:

- Waterlogged roads, muddy roads, potholes, ice- and snow-covered roads, roads with speed bumps, roads with obstacles
- Traffic conditions with a lot of pedestrians, bicycles or animals
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, freeway ramps, and congested roads
- Winding roads and sharp turns
- Uphill and downhill roads
- Bumpy roads
- Narrow roads
- Tunnel entrances and exits
- Non-standard roads
- Roads without center medians

Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions do not exhaust all the situations that may affect the proper operation of Automatic Emergency Brake. Automatic Emergency Brake may be affected by many factors. To avoid safety accidents, be sure to always pay attention to traffic, road and vehicle conditions and drive with caution.

Emergency Active Stop (EAS)

When the system detects that you are not in a normal driving state (e.g., your hands have not been on the steering wheel for a long time, you have been distracted and tired of driving for a long time, or you have left your seat, etc.), it will activate the Emergency Active Stop (EAS) feature if the system meets the conditions for normal operation.

When Emergency Active Stop is activated, your car will sound an auditory reminder, provide a voice warning, issue a Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display alert, and turn on the hazard warning lights. The system will alert you to take control of your car by continuously braking and emitting loud ringer and alerts until the car stops. After stopping, the doors will be automatically unlocked and emergency services will be called.

When Emergency Active Stop is active, you can deactivate it and take control of your car at any time by stepping on the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, or turning the steering wheel, or turning off the hazard warning lights.

Warning

Once activated, the Emergency Active Stop feature will brake the vehicle until it stops, during which lane departure or collision may occur. Therefore, do not rely solely on or take the initiative to activate this feature.

Please stay focused at all times while driving, as you always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Precautions and Restrictions

The following situations may lead to a camera recognition disorder that affects the performance of Emergency Active Stop (EAS), which include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of camera
- Blocked or dirty camera
- Reduced recognition capability due to dim surrounding environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel
- Sudden changes in ambient brightness, such as tunnel entrances or exits
- Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles
- Camera directly exposed to light
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead that falls onto your vehicle
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, wiper, ice, snow, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera
- Wet roads

The following situations may lead to a radar recognition disorder that affects the performance of Emergency Active Stop (EAS), which include but are not limited to:

- Misplaced or blocked radar, or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.
- The radar or the area surrounding it is impacted due to a vehicle collision, scratch, etc.
- Extreme weather such as heavy rain, snow, fog, which may affect radar performance
- Due to the limitation of radar target recognition characteristics, in rare special circumstances, false alarms may occur for some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.

The following situations may lead to a LiDAR recognition disorder that affects the feature of Emergency Active Stop (EAS), or even deactivates the feature. These situations include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of LiDAR
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead
- Driving on wet or waterlogged roads
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, ice, snow, tinted or transparent film or other obstructions on the LiDAR window
- Overheating of the LiDAR caused by prolonged sun exposure
- Due to the limitations of LiDAR characteristics, in rare special cases, false alarms may occur for traffic signs and high-speed anti-collision barrels in high-speed and elevated sections of road

Only the vehicles that meet the conditions will be responded by Emergency Active Stop (EAS). The targets below cannot be guaranteed to be identified, and may trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Side-crossing vehicles
- Motorcycles, tricycles

The targets below will not trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Bicycles
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Traffic cones
- Walls
- Barriers
- Side-crossing vehicles
- Oncoming vehicles
- Other non-vehicle objects

Caution

- This feature does not guarantee the recognition of special-shaped targets, especially at night or a poor lighting environment where the driver needs to pay extra attention. Such vehicles include vehicles with a covered rear or irregularly-shaped rear, vehicles with a rear below a certain height, and unladen carriers.
- This feature may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

The following situations may cause late recognition and response of Emergency Active Stop (EAS) because the target is not directly ahead, which include but are not limited to:

- Emergency Active Stop will not respond to targets in the sensor blind zone. For example, it cannot detect the blind spots at the corners of the vehicle and the blind spots on the sides of the vehicle.
- When approaching or turning along the road, some targets may be mis-selected or missed, resulting in the unexpected acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.
- When going uphill, it may miss a target or misjudge the distance to the lead vehicle. When going downhill, it may accelerate the vehicle, causing it to exceed the cruising speed.
- When only part of the body of a vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of your vehicle (especially when it's a larger vehicle cutting in, like a bus, truck, etc.), it may not be able to recognize and respond to the target.
- When your vehicle abruptly cuts into the rear of the vehicle ahead, or another vehicle abruptly cuts into or out of the front of your vehicle, it may not be able to recognize the target in a responsive manner.

Emergency Active Stop does not guarantee reliable target recognition in all circumstances, as its operation may be affected by special or complicated road conditions, including but not limited to:

- Waterlogged roads, muddy roads, potholes, ice- and snow-covered roads, roads with speed bumps, roads with obstacles
- Traffic conditions with a lot of pedestrians, bicycles or animals
- Complex and changeable traffic conditions, such as busy intersections, expressway ramps, congested roads
- Winding and turning roads, rapid turning roads
- Uphill and downhill roads
- Rough roads
- Narrow roads
- Tunnel entrances and exits
- Non-standard roads
- Roads without a median

It may not be able to provide sufficient lateral grip in the following situations, including but not limited to:

- The brake feature cannot fully work (such as when brake parts are too cold, too hot, wet, etc.)
- Improper vehicle maintenance (excessive wear of the brake or tires, abnormal tire pressure, etc.)
- The vehicle is driving on special roads (such as uphill and downhill, water, mud, potholes, ice and snow roads, etc.)

Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully covered all the situations that may affect the normal operation of the Emergency Active Stop system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Emergency Active Stop system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) can provide a certain steer assist capability to help the driver correct the vehicle position urgently to prevent the risk of collision as much as possible when the vehicle deviates from its lane involuntarily or when there is a potential side collision risk in its adjacent lane.

When the vehicle speed is about 50-180 km/h, Emergency Lane Keeping may be triggered in the following four emergency scenarios:

- Without having the turn light on, your vehicle deviates involuntarily from its lane to the right curb
- Without having the turn light on, when the lane marking is a solid line, your vehicle deviates involuntarily from its lane to the side where the solid line is
- Without having the turn light on, when there is an oncoming vehicle in your left lane, your vehicle deviates involuntarily from its lane to the left
- When there is a vehicle approaching rapidly from behind in your left lane, your vehicle deviates from its lane involuntarily or actively changes lane to the left

Enabling/Disabling Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)** to turn this feature on or off.

It is not recommended to turn off this feature. When this feature is turned off, it will not be able to assist the driver by taking emergency control of the steering when there is a potential risk of a side collision.

Warning

Emergency Lane Keeping has limited steering torque which can only provide certain steering assist and cannot fully guarantee the prevention of lane departure or avoidance of danger. Therefore, please take over steering in time instead of relying solely on Emergency Lane Keeping.

Please control the vehicle direction immediately when cornering, turning around, or driving on winding roads or roads with sharp curves.

Warning

As a driver assist feature, Emergency Lane Keeping cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions. Never rely solely on Emergency Lane Keeping to avoid danger. For safety reasons, never test this feature by deliberately or actively triggering Emergency Lane Keeping. If you come across a dangerous situation, never wait Emergency Lane Keeping to intervene before taking action. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely in the lane and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Warning

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on Emergency Lane Keeping
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road

Operating Conditions of Emergency Lane Keeping:

- Your vehicle speed is about 50-180 km/h
- Your vehicle drives normally without sudden acceleration, deceleration or steering
- Your vehicle is in the center of its lane and does not drive on the lane marking
- The high-definition camera features normally and provides clear vision
- No components of the Lane Keeping Assist system are faulty
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, such as:
    - The driver is seated
    - Your vehicle is in gear position D
    - Anti-lock brake system, traction control system and vehicle stability control system are not triggered

Caution

Emergency Lane Keeping is automatically activated when the conditions are met in an emergency.

Emergency Lane Keeping can only provide limited steering assist and cannot control the vehicle's speed.

Emergency Lane Keeping is unable to constantly control the steering. Therefore, it cannot always keep the vehicle centered in the lane.

When Emergency Lane Keeping controls your steering, the steering wheel will turn accordingly.

You can take over steering by turning the steering wheel manually.

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) in Case of Deviation to Right Curb

When the operating conditions of Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) are met, ELK can provide a certain degree of steer assist if your vehicle deviates from its lane involuntarily to the right curb without having the turn light on. At this time, the right side of the central lane marking will be displayed in yellow.

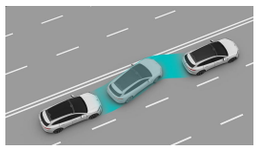
Warning

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically and the vehicle may deviate to the right in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Curbs are not clear or cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective curbs, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night;
- There are roadside obstacles that Emergency Lane Keeping cannot identify, such as fences, guard rails, traffic cones and cone rods;

- The vehicle is steering around a sharp bend, or driving on a sloped road, bumpy road, road with water or snow and ice, etc.

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) in Case of Deviation to Solid Lane Marking



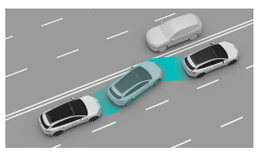
When the operating conditions of Emergency Lane Keeping are met, ELK can provide a certain degree of steer assist if your vehicle deviates from its lane involuntarily to the solid lane marking without having the turn light on. At this time, the corresponding side of the central lane marking will be displayed in red.

Warning

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically and the vehicle may deviate to the solid lane line in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.
- Lane lines are special ones.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The vehicle is steering around a sharp bend, or driving on a sloped road, bumpy road, road with water or snow and ice, etc.

Emergency Lane Keeping with Risk of Left Front Collision



When the operating conditions of Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) are met, ELK can provide a certain degree of steer assist if your vehicle deviates from its lane involuntarily to the left without having the turn light on when there is an oncoming vehicle in your left lane and the lane marking is clear. At this time, the left side of the central lane marking will be displayed in red.

Warning

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically and the vehicle may collide with the lead vehicle on the left in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.
- Lane lines are special ones.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The vehicle is steering around a sharp bend, or driving on a sloped road, bumpy road, road with water or snow and ice, etc.
- The oncoming vehicle is not a vehicle, such as a motorcycle.

Emergency Lane Keeping with Risk of Left Rear Collision

When the operating conditions of Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) are met, ELK can provide a certain degree of steer assist if your vehicle deviates from its lane involuntarily or actively changes lane to the left when there is a vehicle approaching rapidly from behind in your left lane and the lane marking is clear. At this time, the left side of the central lane marking will be displayed in red.

Warning

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically and the vehicle may collide with the vehicle approaching from behind on the left in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.
- Lane lines are special ones.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The vehicle is steering around a sharp bend, or driving on a sloped road, bumpy road, road with water or snow and ice, etc.

Precautions and Restrictions

The following situations may cause Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) to fail to operate as expected or exit automatically due to a camera recognition disorder. Please steer your vehicle in a timely manner. These situations include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of camera
- Blocked or dirty camera
- Reduced recognition capability due to dim surrounding environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel
- Sudden changes in ambient brightness, such as tunnel entrances or exits

- Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles
- Camera directly exposed to light
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead that falls onto your vehicle
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, wiper, ice, snow, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera
- Wet roads

The following situations may cause the Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) to fail to operate as expected or exit automatically due to a radar recognition disorder. Please steer your vehicle in a timely manner. These situations include but are not limited to:

- Misplaced or blocked radar, or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.
- The radar or the area surrounding it is impacted due to a vehicle collision, scratch, etc.
- Extreme weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze, which may affect radar performance
- Due to the limitation of radar target recognition characteristics, in rare special circumstances, false alarms may occur for some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.

The following situations may lead to a LiDAR recognition disorder, affect the feature of Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK), and even cause the feature to deactivate. These situations include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of LiDAR
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead
- Driving on wet or waterlogged roads
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, ice, snow, tinted or transparent film or other obstructions on the LiDAR window
- Overheating of the LiDAR caused by prolonged sun exposure
- Due to the limitation of LiDAR characteristics, in rare special cases, false alarms may occur for the traffic signs/high-speed anti-collision barrels in high-speed/elevated sections

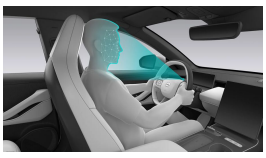
Special or complex road conditions may cause the Lane Keeping Assist system to fail to operate as expected or exit automatically. Please steer your vehicle in a timely manner. These situations include but are not limited to:

- Waterlogged roads, muddy roads, potholes, ice- and snow-covered roads, roads with speed bumps, roads with obstacles
- Traffic conditions with a lot of pedestrians, bicycles or animals
- Complex and changeable traffic conditions, such as busy intersections, expressway ramps, congested roads
- Winding and turning roads, rapid turning roads
- Uphill and downhill roads
- Rough roads
- Narrow roads
- Tunnel entrances and exits
- Construction areas

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully described all the situations that may affect the normal operation of the Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) system. In order to avoid accidents, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Advanced Driver Monitoring System (ADMS)

The Advanced Driver Monitoring System (ADMS) can monitor the driver's driving status.



When it is enabled and conditions for activating the feature are satisfied, once the driver is detected to be tired or distracted, NOMI will provide different levels of warnings through expressions and sounds. The digital instrument cluster will also remind the driver to focus on driving and protect the driver's safety.

Caution

Advanced Driver Monitoring System cannot operate under all conditions and is only designed to assist driving. The driver should always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely.

Therefore, it is of great importance that you pay attention when driving and take regular breaks. When a driver is alerted or feels fatigued, they should adjust their behavior or pull over safely as soon as possible to take a break.

When the Advanced Driver Monitoring System (ADMS) is disabled, related features for advanced driver assistance systems such as Lane Centering Control (LCC) and Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will be unable to be used or will be exited.

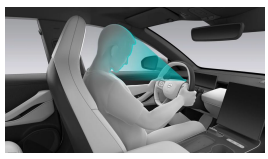
After the driver adjusts the steering wheel, the feature requires a brief recalibration, during which the feature fault light for the Advanced Driver Monitoring System (ADMS) will appear.

If you adjust the steering wheel while using the advanced driver assistance system features such as Lane Centering Control (LCC) or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), the system will prompt "NP Driver Assistance is exiting, please take control of the steering wheel".

Enabling/Disabling the Driver Drowsiness and Attention Warning System

The Advanced Driver Monitoring System (ADMS) monitors the driver's drowsiness and attention state.

- Driver Drowsiness Reminder



- Driver Distraction Reminder

Enter Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving and Parking > Drowsiness Reminder** or **Driver Distraction Reminder** to enable or disable this feature.

After this feature is enabled, when the vehicle speed is 20 km/h or above, the system will keep monitoring the status and provide voice warnings.

Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display

- Not enabled

- Enabled

- Level 1 alarm (take the driver distraction reminder feature for example)
- Level 2 alarm (take the driver distraction reminder feature for example)
- If the driver still does not take control of the vehicle after a Level 2 alarm, the Emergency Active Stop will be activated and triggered when the normal working conditions of the system are met.
- When the following are displayed due to a system failure or malicious occlusion of the camera, it indicates that the feature is limited. Please promptly contact the NIO Service Center.

Caution

The camera will not record or share any images, audio or videos.

Precautions and Restrictions

In some cases, the detection of driver drowsy driving and distracted driving behaviors may be affected or fail, resulting in the system not providing corresponding warnings, being partially unavailable or providing false alarms, such as:

- At night and in low light
- Sunlight, opposite headlights and other direct light interference
- Adjust the seat
- Adjust or turn the steering wheel
- Under the condition of eye occlusion, which includes but is not limited to various types of dark glasses with low transmittance, polarizers, sunglasses, and eyeglass frame occlusion, etc
- Wearing accessories such as hats, scarves and bandanas that may alter the shape of the head
- Wearing a mask

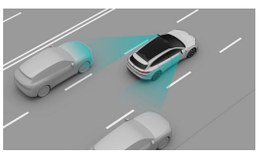
Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully covered all the conditions that may affect the normal operation of the Advanced Driver Monitoring System. There are many factors that may interfere with the Advanced Driver Monitoring System. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert

The Blind Spot Detection (BSD) and Lane Change Alert (LCA) will remind you to pay attention to lane change safety through visual, auditory and tactile alarms when there are other vehicles in the blind spot of your vehicle or other vehicles approaching quickly in the blind spot.



The Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert will only be activated when the speed of your vehicle exceeds about 15 km/h.

Caution

This feature is able to detect the lanes next to the vehicle and more than 70 meters from the rear.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert** to enable or disable this feature and select an appropriate means of reminding you.

When the feature is enabled and activated, the Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) will remind you that there is a vehicle approaching from behind as shown in the figure.

When a vehicle in the driver's blind spot and a vehicle approaching rapidly from behind are detected, a marker saying that there is a vehicle on the side will be displayed on the rearview mirror. If you turn on the turn light on the corresponding side in this case, it will remind you not to change lanes with the following warnings:

- Marker light on the rearview mirror
- Sound + Marker light on the rearview mirror flashes
- Steering wheel vibrates + Marker light on the rearview mirror flashes
- Sound + Steering wheel vibrates + Marker light on the rearview mirror flashes

Caution

The chime may not be heard if the environmental noise is too loud, such as when the audio system is played at high volumes or the surrounding environment is too noisy.

In a bright environment such as daytime, the warning of the red ambient lighting may not be easily noticeable.

Caution

Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Assist do not work when the vehicle is in REVERSE.

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Caution

When you drive on a road with sharp curves, wide lanes or an uneven surface, Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Assist may not be able to warn you about vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Assist may give false warnings in the following situations:

- Driving near protective fences
- Driving on/under a bridge, or through a tunnel
- Driving besides bushes, trees, etc.
- When there are wire poles, street lights or low concrete walls along the road
- Driving near construction areas such as factory buildings, ports, etc.
- Driving on urban roads or multi-lane intersections

Warning

- Radars are mounted on or behind the bumper. Keep the bumper clean and free of mud, ice, metal plates, stickers, labels, and leaves. Failure to do so may impact the performance of the radars.
- If this feature does not function properly due to a collision, scratches, radar failure, or malfunction, please contact NIO as soon as possible.
- If the radar malfunctions for a long period of time and fails to receive any fault-related alerts, please contact NIO as soon as possible.
- This feature only detects and alerts you to vehicles and large motorcycles or objects, and may have a delay or omission, or even fail to detect or alert you to objects such as pedestrians, bicycles, or skateboards.
- This feature does not alert you to stationary objects. False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips, or concrete walls.
- Heavy rain, snow, fog, and other extreme weather conditions may impair radar performance. Please drive with caution, and pay attention to your surroundings.
- Never use this feature in the Trailer Mode.
- You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with applicable traffic safety laws and regulations.

Warning

Even with Blind Spot Detection (BSD) and Lane Change Assist (LCA), you should still drive with caution and use the rearview mirror and the side mirrors wisely.

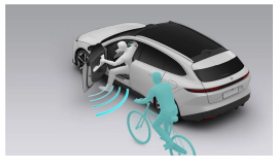
Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully described all the situations that may affect the normal operation of the Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert systems. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Door Open Warning (DOW)

When you open the door of your vehicle, if vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians approaching from behind may affect the safety of opening the door or even cause a collision, the Door Open Warning (DOW) will remind you to be careful when opening the door through visual and auditory alarms.



Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Door Open Warning (DOW)** to enable or disable this feature.

When the Door Open Warning (DOW) feature is enabled, your vehicle will remind you in the following ways. At this time, you or your passengers should avoid opening the door and confirm whether it is safe to open the door first:

- The ambient lighting turns red
- Icon on the side mirror
- Warning alarm
- Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) displays "Watch out for vehicles approaching from behind"

Note

Door Open Warning monitors for targets approaching fast from behind.

Caution

This feature is only available when the vehicle is in DRIVE (D) or PARK (P).

Caution

The chime may not be heard if the environmental noise is too loud, such as when the audio system is played at high volumes or the surrounding environment is too noisy.

In a bright environment such as daytime, the warning of the red ambient lighting may not be easily noticeable.

Warning

Door Open Warning cannot accurately alert you in all situations and cannot replace active observation by you and passengers, as well as the function of the rearview mirror and side mirrors. Please do not rely excessively on this feature and always be aware of the environment outside the vehicle when opening doors.

Warning

- Radars are mounted on or behind the bumper. Keep the bumper clean and free of mud, ice, metal plates, stickers, labels, and leaves. Failure to do so may impact the performance of the radars.
- If this feature does not function properly due to a collision, scratches, radar failure, or malfunction, please contact NIO as soon as possible.
- If the radar malfunctions for a long period of time and fails to receive any fault-related alerts, please contact NIO as soon as possible.
- This feature only detects and alerts you to vehicles and large motorcycles or objects, and may have a delay or omission, or even fail to detect or alert you to objects such as pedestrians, bicycles, or skateboards.
- This feature does not alert you to stationary objects. False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips, or concrete walls.
- Heavy rain, snow, fog, and other extreme weather conditions may impair radar performance. Please drive with caution, and pay attention to your surroundings.
- Never use this feature in the Trailer Mode.
- You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with applicable traffic safety laws and regulations.

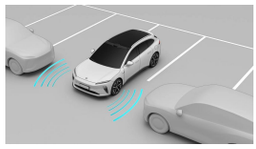
Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings and precautions have not fully described all the conditions that may affect the normal operation of the Door Open Warning (DOW) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Door Open Warning (DOW) system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)

When driving at low speeds, if the system detects a potential collision risk with the front crossing vehicle, the Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) feature can warn the driver to be careful through visual and auditory alerts.



Warning

Cross Traffic Alert is only a supplement to, and not a substitute for, your visual observation.

As a driver assist feature, Cross Traffic Alert cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and decide to use Cross Traffic Alert or not after your safety is ensured.

It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and complies with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Enabling/Disabling Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)** to enable or disable this feature.

When the operating conditions are satisfied, if a potential collision risk with the front crossing vehicle is detected, it will remind you through visual and auditory alerts on the Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD), 360 Surround View interface and Parking Assist interface.

Operating conditions for the Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA):

- The vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h and higher than 0 km/h.
- The speed of the front crossing vehicle is within a certain range of the normal vehicle speed.
- The front lateral radar operates normally and has a clear field of view.
- The driver is seated
- Your vehicle is in gear position D

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Precautions and Restrictions

The targets below cannot be guaranteed to be identified, and may trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Motorcycles
- Electric bikes
- Tricycles
- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Bicycles
- Other non-vehicle objects

The targets below will not trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Oncoming vehicles/vehicles driving in the same direction
- Stationary objects

The Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) does not respond to targets in blind spots of the sensor. The Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) cannot detect lateral vehicles in front of this vehicle through obstacles or parked vehicles.

For example, the Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) cannot detect the front crossing vehicles in the following situations, which include but are not limited to:

- Parked in the innermost position
- The parking space is at an angle

The following situations may lead to a radar recognition disorder and affect the performance of the Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA), which include but are not limited to:

- Misplaced or blocked radar, or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.
- The radar or the area surrounding it is impacted due to a vehicle collision, scratch, etc.
- Extreme weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze, which may affect radar performance
- Due to the limitation of radar target recognition characteristics, in rare special circumstances, false alarms may occur for some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.

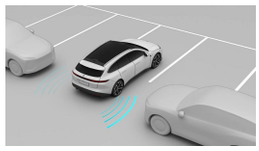
Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully described all the conditions that may affect the normal operation of the Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B)

When reversing, if the system detects a potential collision risk with the rear crossing vehicle, the Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B) feature can warn the driver to pay attention to safety through visual and auditory alerts and even enhance the warning effect to the driver by braking briefly if necessary.



Warning

Cross Traffic Alert is only a supplement to, and not a substitute for, your visual observation.

As a driver assist feature, Cross Traffic Alert cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and decide to use Cross Traffic Alert or not after your safety is ensured.

It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and complies with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Warning

Never use this feature in the Trailer Mode.

Warning

Rear Cross Traffic Alert only provides a warning and cannot guarantee to stop your vehicle. Never depend on it to avoid a collision or reduce the impact of a collision.

Enabling/Disabling Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B)

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B)** to enable or disable this feature.

When it is enabled, you can select the assist level in the Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B) Settings:

- Alert only: When the vehicle speed is lower than about 15km/h and the operating conditions are satisfied, if a potential collision risk with rear crossing vehicles from behind is detected, it will remind the vehicle in the rear through visual and auditory alerts on the digital instrument cluster, 360 Surround View interface and Parking Assist interface.
- Alert and brake actively: When the vehicle speed is about 1-15km/h and the operating conditions are satisfied, besides visual and auditory alerts, the system will warn you by a brief instance of active braking if necessary, but cannot ensure that the vehicle will come to a complete stop.

Operating conditions for the Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B):

- The speed of the rear crossing vehicle is between about 5 and 60 km/h
- The rear lateral radar operates normally and has a clear field of view
- The driver is seated
- All doors are closed
- Your vehicle is in gear position R

Caution

When you select Warning & Braking, if you fully press the brake pedal or accelerator pedal, the function may not intervene.

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Precautions and Restrictions

The targets below cannot be guaranteed to be identified, and may trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Motorcycles
- Electric bikes
- Tricycles
- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Bicycles
- Other non-vehicle objects

The targets below will not trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Oncoming vehicles/vehicles driving in the same direction

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B) does not respond to targets in blind spots of the sensor. The Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B) cannot detect vehicles behind this vehicle through obstacles or parked vehicles.

For example, the Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B) cannot detect rear crossing vehicles in the following situations, which include but are not limited to:

- Parked in the innermost position

- The parking space is at an angle

The following situations may lead to a radar recognition disorder and affect the performance of the Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B), which include but are not limited to:

- Misplaced or blocked radar, or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.
- The radar or the area surrounding it is impacted due to a vehicle collision, scratch, etc.
- Extreme weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze, which may affect radar performance
- Due to the limitation of radar target recognition characteristics, in rare special circumstances, false alarms may occur for some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.

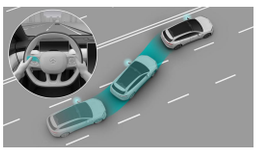
Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully described all the conditions that may affect the normal operation of the Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Rear Cross Traffic Alert with Braking (RCTA-B) system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Active Lane Change (ALC)

The Active Lane Change (ALC) adds a lane change assistance feature on the basis of realizing Lane Centering Control (LCC). After enabling this feature in Settings, the system will assist the vehicle to complete the lane change by toggling the turn light lever when the environment and road conditions meet certain requirements.



The Active Lane Change (ALC) is applicable to high speed roads. The current and target lanes must be well lit, have clear lane markings and space to change lanes.

Warning

As a driving assist feature, Active Lane Change cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather, and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions and make your own decision on whether to use Active Lane Change if it is safe. You should always be ready to take over when you find that the conditions of the traffic, road, or the vehicle are not suitable for Active Lane Change, or there are other unsafe factors.

You always bear the ultimate responsibility for changing lanes safely and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

Enabling/Disabling Active Lane Change (ALC)

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Active Lane Change (ALC)** to enable or disable this feature.

Operating conditions for the Active Lane Change (ALC):

- The driver's hands on the steering wheel.
- The Lane Centering Control (LCC) is enabled and operating normally.
- The Active Lane Change (ALC) is enabled and operating normally.
- The sensor features properly and the field of view is clear.
- The vehicle speed is about 60-130 km/h.
- The current and target lanes meet all the safety conditions to change lanes. For example:
    - The lane marking on the side of the lane change is a dotted line.
    - The curvatures of the current and target lanes are small.
    - The vehicle maintains a safe distance to the vehicles in front of and behind it in the current and target lanes.
    - There is no Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert and other alarms in the target lane.
    - The lane markings on both sides of the target lane are clear.
- None of the components for the Active Lane Change (ALC) are faulty and the vehicle meets all safety conditions. For example:
    - No malfunction with the turn light
    - The driver is seated
    - The driver has fastened the seat belt
    - All doors are closed
    - Your vehicle is in gear position D
    - The driver does not step on the brake pedal
    - Anti-lock brake system, traction control system and vehicle stability control system are not triggered

Enabling the Active Lane Change (ALC) feature in Settings does not mean that the feature has been activated.

After meeting the operating conditions, you must perform a visual check to confirm the safety of the lane change environment, and then toggle the turn light lever on the corresponding side. The system will detect if your hands are on the steering wheel.

- The system will activate the Active Lane Change (ALC) feature to assist the lane change if it detects that the conditions to change lanes have been met. At this time, the Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) will display the light band on the corresponding side turning blue and disappearing after a successful lane change. After the lane change is completed, please confirm that the turn light lever has been toggled back.

- The system will not perform the lane change if it detects that the conditions to change lanes has not been met and the Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) will display the light band on the corresponding side turning red.

Before or during a lane change, toggle the turn light lever in the opposite direction of the lane change to cancel the lane change. When the following situations occur, the lane change will be interrupted, and you will be reminded through the digital instrument cluster and sound alerts of the need to take control of your vehicle:

- The Active Lane Change (ALC) detects an unsafe lane change environment, such as when the activation alarms for Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Alert go off.

- Steer Assist is exited for reasons such as taking over the steering wheel control, unclear lane markings, and passing through excessively curved bends.

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Steer Assist are exited at the same time for reasons such as pressing the button and depressing the brake pedal.

Caution

Active Lane Change can only change one lane at a time.

Caution

Assisted lane changes may fail if the light and visibility are poor at night, or when lane lines are not clear.

Warning

Active Lane Change may suddenly be canceled due to unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and be prepared to take over at any time.

Warning

You must always confirm if it is safe and appropriate before and when changing lanes. Please note that Active Lane Change cannot respond to pedestrians, obstacles, oncoming vehicles, etc. Never rely solely on Active Lane Change to choose a driving path. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for changing lanes safely.

Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD)

- Active Lane Change (ALC) is making a lane change.

- Active Lane Change (ALC) suspends or cannot make a lane change.

- Active Lane Change (ALC) completes the lane change.

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Precautions and Restrictions

The following situations may prevent the Active Lane Change (ALC) from completing the lane change or operating as expected, requiring the driver to take control of the steering wheel at any time, which include but are not limited to:

- Passing through bends with excessive curvature, such as high-speed ramps

- The lane markings of the current lane and target lane are not clear, worn, missing, crossed, or shaded by other vehicles or buildings or landscapes

- Passing through road sections without lane markings, such as non-standard roads, intersections and construction areas

- Passing through areas with unclear lane division, such as areas with merging or dividing lane markings, high-speed ramp crossings, urban intersection zones and left turn waiting zones

- Passing through road sections with special lane markings, such as speed reduction markings and channelizing-line markings

- There are edges or other high-contrast lines on roads instead of lane markings, such as pavement joints and curbs

- Lane markings cannot be recognized or are not recognized correctly due to height change, such as on the uphill and downhill

- Lane markings cannot be recognized or are not recognized correctly due to light, such as reflection of lane markings caused by strong light, poor visibility or insufficient light caused by bad weather and or at night

- The distance between the lane markings on both sides of the current lane or the target lane is too wide or too narrow

The following situations may lead to a camera recognition disorder, thus making it impossible to complete the lane change assistance, which include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of camera

- Blocked or dirty camera

- Limited recognition at night

- Dark surroundings, such as at dawn, dusk, night, in tunnels

- Sudden changes in ambient brightness, such as tunnel entrances or exits

- Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles

- Camera directly exposed to light

- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze

- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead that falls onto your vehicle
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, wiper, ice, snow, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera
- Wet roads

The following situations may lead to a radar recognition disorder, thus making it impossible to complete the lane change assistance, which include but are not limited to:

- Misplaced or blocked radar, or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.
- The radar or the area surrounding it is impacted due to a vehicle collision, scratch, etc.
- Extreme weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze, which may affect radar performance
- Due to the limitation of radar target recognition characteristics, in rare special circumstances, false alarms may occur for some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.

The following situations may lead to a LiDAR recognition disorder, affect the feature of lane change assistance, and even cause the feature to deactivate, which include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of LiDAR
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead
- Driving on wet or waterlogged roads
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, ice, snow, tinted or transparent film or other obstructions on the LiDAR window
- Overheating of the LiDAR caused by prolonged sun exposure
- Due to the limitation of LiDAR characteristics, in rare special cases, false alarms may occur for the traffic signs/high-speed anti-collision barrels in high-speed/elevated sections

The Active Lane Change (ALC) may leak or misdetect obstacles in the target and current lanes. You must always confirm whether it is safe and appropriate to change lanes before and during the lane change. The targets below cannot be guaranteed to be identified, and may trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Side-crossing vehicles
- Motorcycles, tricycles

The targets below will not trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Bicycles
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers
- Oncoming vehicles
- Other non-vehicle objects

Caution

- Active Lane Change cannot guarantee the recognition of special-shaped targets. Please pay extra attention, especially at night, to targets. Such vehicles include vehicles with a covered rear or irregular shape, vehicles with a rear below a certain height, and unladen carriers.
- Active Lane Change may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

It is not recommended to use Active Lane Change (ALC) in special or complex road conditions, which include but are not limited to:

- Waterlogged roads, muddy roads, potholes, ice- and snow-covered roads, roads with speed bumps, roads with obstacles
- Traffic conditions with a lot of pedestrians, bicycles or animals
- Complex and changeable traffic conditions, such as busy intersections, expressway ramps, congested roads
- Winding and turning roads, rapid turning roads
- Uphill and downhill roads
- Rough roads
- Narrow roads
- Tunnel entrances and exits
- Non-standard roads
- Roads without a median

Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully covered all the situations that may affect the normal operation of the Active Lane Change (ALC) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Active Lane Change (ALC) system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Lane Centering Control (LCC)

Lane Centering Control provides the Steer Assist feature to keep the vehicle in the lane on the basis of the vehicle speed control and distance maintenance features under Adaptive Cruise Control. Lane Centering Control uses high-definition cameras, radar and LiDAR to detect vehicles ahead on the driving path, so as to actively control the speed of the vehicle and maintain the distance between itself and the vehicle ahead. Lane Centering Control uses high-definition cameras to identify lane markings as well. When the lane markings on both sides are clear, it can assist steering to keep the vehicle in the current lane.

Lane Centering Control , as a driving assist feature, is unable to achieve auto driving capabilities, so the driver shall keep both hands on the steering wheel and stay focused, ready to take over the vehicle at any time.

Lane Centering Control is mainly for use on closed roads with clear lane markings and restricted access, such as expressways, elevated main roads or congested road sections.

Caution

Lane Centering Control will strive to keep the vehicle in the lane when there are clear lane lines on both sides. Special road conditions and poor lighting on rainy days or at nighttime may result in impaired lane recognition, failure to keep the vehicle in the lane, or scratching. In this case, it is suggested that you temporarily turn off Lane Centering Control and switch to Adaptive Cruise Control.

Warning

As a driving assist feature, Lane Centering Control cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and decide to use Lane Centering Control or not after your safety is ensured.

You should always be ready to take over when you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or the vehicle are not suitable for enabling Lane Centering Control, or there are other unsafe factors.

You always bear the ultimate responsibility for maintaining an appropriate distance and speed and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Warning

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on the system
- Using the feature in bad weather conditions
- Using the system in an environment where there are many pedestrians, bicycles, or animals
- Using the system on sharp curves
- Using the system when the lane lines are unclear or the lighting is poor
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road

Warning

As a feature for driving comfort, and not for preventing collision, Lane Centering Control has a limited maximum deceleration that is less than the maximum deceleration required by Automatic Emergency Brake and manual driving scenarios. Therefore, never rely solely on Lane Centering Control to decelerate the vehicle when avoiding a collision.

Lane Centering Control may fail to stop your vehicle or maintain a safe distance from the lead vehicle when the relative speed between your vehicle and the lead vehicle is great. In this case, exit Lane Centering Control immediately. Do not rely on Lane Centering Control to bring your vehicle to a complete stop regardless of whether it is following a stationary vehicle or a lead vehicle.

Warning

Lane Centering Control has a limited steering torque that is less than the maximum steering force required in normal driving scenarios. Therefore, do not rely solely on Lane Centering Control to steer your vehicle. You should always be prepared to take over the steering, especially when navigating curves.

Please take over the steering immediately when cornering, turning around, and driving on winding roads or roads with sharp curves. Do not rely on Lane Centering Control in these situations due to limited visibility of lanes.

Enabling/Disabling Lane Centering Control (LCC)

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Driver Assistance** and choose **Lane Centering** to turn this feature on or off.

Turning on **Lane Centering** in the Settings does not mean that LCC is activated.

- Middle button: activate or deactivate Lane Centering Control (LCC)
- Up button: increase or resume the cruising speed
- Down button: decrease the cruising speed
- Left button: decrease the following distance
- Right button: increase the following distance

When the operating conditions are met, press the Middle button to activate Lane Centering Control (LCC).

- If the lane markings on both sides are clear and the vehicle is in the center of the current lane, activating Steer Assist will activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) as well.
- If the lane markings on both sides are unclear or the vehicle is not in the center of the current lane, it will first activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and start searching for lane markings, and then activate Steer Assist when the conditions are met.

Lane Centering Control (LCC) is enabled at a vehicle speed of 0-180 km/h.

- If the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, 30 km/h will be set as the cruising speed
- If the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h but not higher than 180 km/h, the current vehicle speed will be set as the cruising speed

When Lane Centering Control activates Adaptive Cruise Control and starts searching for lane markings, you can release the accelerator pedal, and the system will maintain the set cruising speed.

- If there is a lead vehicle, Lane Centering Control will adjust the speed of your vehicle according to the speed and distance of the lead vehicle, and the maximum speed will not exceed the cruising speed
- When there is no vehicle ahead, Lane Centering Control will quickly adjust the speed of your vehicle to the cruising speed

When Lane Centering Control activates Steer Assist, it will actively assist with steering control, however, please keep your hands lightly on the steering wheel. The pressure of your hands may have a slight effect on the steer assist control, please pay close attention to the driving situation, and be ready to take control of the steering wheel at any time to control the direction of the vehicle.

The steering wheel turns when Lane Centering Control (LCC) is controlling the steering. When Lane Centering Control (LCC) is actively accelerating, the accelerator pedal does not move; when it’s decelerating, the brake pedal may move.

Working Condition for Lane Centering Control (LCC):

- The speed does not exceed 180 km/h
- High-definition cameras, radar and LiDAR functioning properly with a clear view
- No components of Lane Centering Control (LCC) are faulty
- The feature cannot be activated when the steering angle of the steering wheel is too large
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, such as:
  - The driver's hands on the steering wheel
  - The driver is seated
  - The driver has fastened the seat belt
  - All doors are closed
  - Your vehicle is in gear position D
  - The driver does not step on the brake pedal
  - Anti-lock brake system, traction control system and vehicle stability control system are not triggered

Adjusting the speed under Lane Centering Control (LCC)

When Lane Centering Control (LCC) is active, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Driver Assistance > Adjust Speed by Steering Wheel Button**, and select the appropriate way to adjust the cruising speed.

The cruising speed can be adjusted by:

- Press +1, press and hold +5

- Press the Up or Down button on the left side of the steering wheel to increase/decrease the cruise speed by 1 km/h
- Press+hold the Up or Down button on the left side of the steering wheel to increase/decrease the cruise speed to the closest 5 km/h increment, that is, if the speed is 82 km/h, press and hold the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel, and the speed will be increased to 85 km/h

- Press and hold +1, press +5
  - Press and hold the Up or Down button on the left side of the steering wheel to increase/decrease the cruise speed by 1 km/h
  - Press the Up or Down button on the left side of the steering wheel to increase/decrease the cruise speed to the closest 5 km/h increment, that is, if the speed is 82 km/h, press the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel, and the speed will be increased to 85 km/h

The maximum set speed for Lane Centering Control (LCC) is 180 km/h,.

The minimum set speed for Lane Centering Control (LCC) is 30 km/h, but it allows the vehicle to decelerate to 0 km/h when following the vehicle ahead.

Caution

- To activate it for the first time, press +1.
- The cruise speed cannot be adjusted via NOMI.

Warning

When driving with this feature on, if the system detects that you are not in a normal driving state (e.g., you are not holding the steering wheel for an extended period of time, you are distracted and fatigued for an extended period of time, or you are out of your seat), it will activate Emergency Active Stop when the normal operating conditions for the system are met.

Adjusting the following time and distance under Lane Centering Control (LCC)

When the system is active or to be activated, the following time and distance can be adjusted in 5 settings.

- Press the Right button on the left side of the steering wheel to set the following time and distance to a farther setting
- Press the Left button on the left side of the steering wheel to set the following time and distance to a closer setting

Takeover and Resume

When driving with Lane Centering Control (LCC) active, you can actively take over the vehicle by stepping on the accelerator pedal or turning the steering wheel. Lane Centering Control (LCC) will no longer respond to the target lead vehicle when you actively take control by heavily stepping on the accelerator pedal.

Lane Centering Control (LCC) will re-activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

Lane Centering Control (LCC) and Steer Assist will retreat to the standby status for the time being when you actively take control by turning the steering wheel, but Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will remain active and search for lane markings, during which time you will be controlling the direction of the vehicle.

When you stop turning the steering wheel, if the lane markings on both sides are clear and the vehicle is in the center of the current lane, Steer Assist will be automatically resumed.

After you exit Lane Centering Control (LCC) by pressing or depressing the brake pedal, you can activate it again by pressing the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel, and you can restore the vehicle speed to the previously set cruising speed.

When Lane Centering Control (LCC) stops the vehicle as the lead vehicle stops, you can press the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel, or step on the accelerator pedal to restore the previously set cruising speed.

Reactivate Lane Centering Control (LCC), activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) first which will start searching for lane markings and, if the lane markings on both sides are clear and the vehicle is in the center of the current lane, activate Steer Assist.

Caution

When the Steer Assist feature of Lane Centering Control (LCC) is working properly,

- if the Active Lane Change (ALC) feature is activated in the Settings, when you toggle the turn light lever, an automatic lane change will be performed with the conditions met. Please refer to "Active Lane Change (ALC)" for details.
- If the Active Lane Change (ALC) feature is not activated in the Settings, when you toggle the turn light lever, the Steer Assist feature of Lane Centering Control (LCC) will be temporarily exited to enter standby state, and you need to take over the steering wheel to control your vehicle direction in a timely manner. At this time, the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) feature is retained and the lane marking is continuously being searched. The Steer Assist feature will be automatically restored once the conditions are met.

Caution

When Steering Assist functions properly and Active Lane Change (ALC) is not enabled in Settings, please take over the steering and exit Steering Assist if you need to change lanes.

Warning

Steering Assist may fail to operate as intended in certain situations or disengage to standby while providing sound and text alerts to remind you to take over steering. During this time, Adaptive Cruise Control will remain on and continue searching for lane lines. When the required conditions are met, Steering Assist will resume automatically. including but not limited to:

- The vehicle is navigating sharp curves, such as on expressway ramps.
- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The road section has no lane lines, such as non-standard roads, intersections, or construction areas.
- The road section has special lane lines, such as deceleration lines or diversion lines.
- Lane lines are not clearly divided, such as lane lines merging or diverting, expressway ramps, urban intersections, left-turn waiting areas, etc.
- There are edges or other high-contrast lines on the road instead of lane lines, such as road joints or curbs.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.

Disabling Lane Centering Control (LCC)

Lane Centering Control (LCC) will be deactivated, and will no longer be in active control of speed and direction, and alert you audibly when:

- The steering wheel button is pressed
- The brake pedal is depressed

In addition, when the working conditions are no longer met, Lane Centering Control (LCC) will be automatically deactivated, and you should take control of the brake pedal, accelerator pedal and steering wheel immediately after that to control the speed and direction of the vehicle.

Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD)

An intelligent driving status indicator light has been added next to the real-time vehicle speed on the left side of the digital instrument cluster. The intelligent driving status indicator light can be used to understand the features of intelligent driving that can be activated now and that is running now, as well as the cruise speed status of intelligent driving.

	Active state	To be activated	Loss of lateral control
Lane Centering Control (LCC)	80 MAX		80 MAX
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	80 MAX		None

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Caution

When neither lane line is clear, but there is a vehicle in front that meets requirements, your vehicle can follow the lead vehicle for a short time.

Warning

When lane lines are unclear on both sides and your vehicle is following the lead vehicle, you may collide with other vehicles in adjacent lanes if the lead vehicle changes lanes at a slow speed. Therefore, you need to be prepared to take over at any time to ensure your safety.

Keep your hands on the steering wheel and eyes on the road ahead when driving with Lane Centering Control (LCC) active.

- When the system detects that your hands have been off the steering wheel and your eyes have been off the road ahead for a period of time, Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display will display “Please keep your hands on the steering wheel” or “Please concentrate on driving”, and alert you audibly.
- When the system detects that your hands have been still off the steering wheel and your eyes have been still off the road ahead after a period of time, Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display will display “Pilot is about to be deactivated, please put your hands on the steering wheel immediately”, or “Pilot is about to be deactivated, please take control of the vehicle immediately”, and keep alerting you audibly.
- When the system detects that your hands have been always off the steering wheel and your eyes have been always off the road ahead after a period of time, Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display will display “Emergency Active Stop is activated, the vehicle is about to stop” and alert you audibly, accompanied by a NOMI voice prompt of “The vehicle is stopping” and double flashing lights.

When the system detects that your hands are on the steering wheel and your eyes are on the road ahead, the warning will disappear.

Maintaining Safe Distance

When Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) displays the “Please drive with caution, the distance to the vehicle ahead is too close” warning, it means that there is a risk of collision because the maximum deceleration available to Lane Centering Control (LCC) can no longer maintain a safe distance, and you need to take control of the brake pedal and steering wheel immediately to control the speed and direction of the vehicle.

Warning

If you encounter a dangerous situation, do not wait for a warning before taking action and take over immediately.

Lead Vehicle Start Alert

When Lane Centering Control (LCC) stops the vehicle as the lead vehicle stops

- If the lead vehicle starts, Lane Centering Control (LCC) will follow it and actively start the vehicle as well. You need to pay attention to the surrounding environment at all times to prevent collision accidents from occurring;
- When the vehicle stops as the lead vehicle stops for more than about 5 seconds, before it starts again to follow the lead vehicle, it will alert you audibly;
- When the vehicle stops as the lead vehicle stops for more than about 5 seconds, and the system detects obstacles ahead that may affect driving, Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) will display “The lead vehicle starts moving” prompt, and you need to re-activate Following Start by pressing the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel or stepping on the accelerator pedal after checking the surroundings;
- After approximately 5 minutes, Lane Centering Control (LCC) will be deactivated and Electric Parking will be activated instead.

After Lane Centering Control (LCC) stops the vehicle as the lead vehicle stops, it will start the vehicle again only when the distance to the lead vehicle exceeds about 4 meters.

Smart Speed Assist

Once activated, when the vehicle is driving on a highway or overpass under Lane Centering Control (LCC), it will alert you to change the speed limit when it detects a change in the road speed limit. You can manually confirm to keep the cruise speed consistent with the current road speed limit.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Smart Speed Assist** to turn this feature on or off.

Warning

Intelligent Speed Control is only a supplement to, and does not function as a substitute for, your visual observation. Never rely solely on the speed limit information recognized by Traffic Sign Recognition.

When the speed of the vehicle exceeds the speed limit of the road, you will be visually alerted of overspeed.

Warning

- As a driving assist feature, Intelligent Speed Control cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Traffic Sign Recognition and Intelligent Speed Control if it is safe.
- Currently, Intelligent Speed Control does not work in complex road conditions such as ramps.
- You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.
- Intelligent Speed Control combines the speed limit information from the map to display the speed limit information on the digital instrument cluster. No speed limit information will be displayed when no speed limit information source is available from the map.

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Precautions and Restrictions

The following situations may cause the camera to identify obstacles, affect the performance of Lane Centering Control (LCC), or even cause deactivation, which include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of camera
- Blocked or dirty camera
- Limited recognition at night
- Dark surroundings, such as at dawn, dusk, night, in tunnels
- Sudden changes in ambient brightness, such as tunnel entrances or exits
- Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles
- Camera directly exposed to light
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead that falls onto your vehicle
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, wiper, ice, snow, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera
- Wet roads

The following situations may cause the radar to identify obstacles, affect the performance of Lane Centering Control (LCC), or even cause deactivation, which include but are not limited to:

- Misplaced or blocked radar, or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.
- The radar or the area surrounding it is impacted due to a vehicle collision, scratch, etc.
- Extreme weather such as heavy rain, snow, fog, which may affect radar performance
- Due to the limitation of radar target recognition characteristics, in rare special circumstances, false alarms may occur for some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.

The following situations may cause the LiDAR to identify obstacles, affect the performance of Lane Centering Control (LCC), or even cause deactivation, which include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of LiDAR
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead
- Driving on wet or waterlogged roads
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, ice, snow, tinted or transparent film or other obstructions on the LiDAR window
- Overheating of the LiDAR caused by prolonged sun exposure
- Due to the limitation of LiDAR characteristics, in rare special cases, false alarms may occur for the traffic signs/high-speed anti-collision barrels in high-speed/elevated sections

The vehicle will only respond to Lane Centering Control (LCC) when the conditions are met The targets below cannot be guaranteed to be identified, and may trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Transverse vehicles
- Motorcycles, tricycles

The targets below will not trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Bicycles
- Traffic cones
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers

- Oncoming vehicles
- Other non-vehicle objects

The following situations may cause the late recognition and response of Lane Centering Control (LCC) because the target is not directly ahead, which include but are not limited to:

- Lane Centering Control (LCC) will not respond to targets in the sensor blind zone. For example, it cannot detect the blind spots at the corners of the vehicle and the blind spots on the sides of the vehicle.
- When approaching or turning along the road, some targets may be mis-selected or missed, resulting in the unexpected acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.
- When going uphill, it may miss a target or misjudge the distance to the lead vehicle. When going downhill, it may accelerate the vehicle, causing it to exceed the cruising speed.
- When only part of the body of a vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of your vehicle (especially when it's a larger vehicle cutting in, like a bus, truck, etc.), it may not be able to recognize the target in a responsive manner and you need to take over in time.
- When your vehicle abruptly cuts into the rear of the vehicle ahead, or another vehicle abruptly cuts into or out of the front of your vehicle, it may not be able to recognize the target in a responsive manner and you need to take over in time.

Caution

- In rare cases, this feature may accelerate your vehicle even when it is not necessary or intended due to a change in, or loss of, the target (especially when cornering or changing lanes).
- In rare cases, this feature may apply the vehicle's brakes when it is not necessary or intended due to the detection of vehicles or objects, or a change in, or loss of, a stationary target in the adjacent lane (especially when cornering or changing lanes).
- When following the lead vehicle, if your vehicle or the lead vehicle switches out of the current lane, acceleration may be restricted by this feature for a certain period of time for your safety. You can take over by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Warning

This feature cannot guarantee accurate target recognition in all situations. If you find that the displayed "lane marking" from the Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) does not match the actual situation, please drive with caution so as to take control of your vehicle in a timely manner. Which include but are not limited to:

- There is actually a lead vehicle, but the digital instrument cluster does not display the target vehicle.
- There is actually no lead vehicle, but the digital instrument cluster shows a lead vehicle.

When driving in special or complex road conditions, it is not recommended to activate Lane Centering Control (LCC) because it may affect the performance of Adaptive Cruise Control and Keeping, or even cause deactivation, which include but are not limited to:

- Waterlogged roads, muddy roads, potholes, ice- and snow-covered roads, roads with speed bumps, roads with obstacles
- Traffic conditions with a lot of pedestrians, bicycles or animals
- Complex and changeable traffic conditions, such as busy intersections, expressway ramps, congested roads
- Winding and turning roads, rapid turning roads
- Uphill and downhill roads
- Rough roads
- Narrow roads
- Tunnel entrances and exits
- Non-standard roads
- Roads without a median

In the following situations, if the vehicle is driving too fast relative to the lead vehicle, Lane Centering Control (LCC) may be subject to limited control, which will result in an inability to maintain a safe distance in a responsive manner, which include but are not limited to:

- Sudden maneuvers of the vehicle ahead (such as sudden turns, acceleration, deceleration, etc.)
- Another vehicle abruptly cutting in or out of the front of your vehicle
- Your vehicle abruptly cutting in behind the vehicle ahead
- Your vehicle driving towards a stationary or slow-moving target at a high speed

It may not be able to provide sufficient braking force in the following situations, which include but are not limited to:

- The brake feature cannot fully work (such as when brake parts are too cold, too hot, wet, etc.)
- Improper vehicle maintenance (excessive wear of the brake or tires, abnormal tire pressure, etc.)
- The vehicle is driving on special roads (such as uphill and downhill, water, mud, potholes, ice and snow roads, etc.)

Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

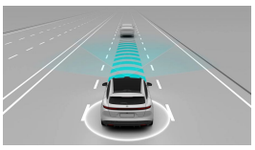
The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully covered all the situations that may affect the normal operation of the Lane Centering Control (LCC) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Lane Centering Control (LCC) system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can be used to sync your vehicle speed automatically with the speed of the lead vehicle. When there is no target in front of your vehicle to respond to, your vehicle will drive at the set speed. When there is a target to respond to, your vehicle will automatically control its speed to try to maintain the following distance you set.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can only be used to control longitudinal speed and distance. This system includes the start and stop feature of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), which allows your vehicle to follow the lead vehicle till it stops (certain deceleration conditions need to be met). If the lead vehicle drives away in a short amount of time, your vehicle can automatically start and follow. If the lead vehicle remains stationary for a period of time, your vehicle will enter the parking state.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is mainly applicable to long-distance driving on dry and smooth standardized straight roads, such as highways, expressways, and long straight roads.



Warning

As a driving assist feature, Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control controls the speed, but not the direction, of your vehicle.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control if it is safe. You should always be ready to take over if you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or the vehicle are not suitable for Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control, or there are other unsafe factors. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for maintaining an appropriate distance and speed and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

Warning

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on the system
- Using the feature in bad weather conditions
- Using the system in an environment where there are many pedestrians, bicycles, or animals
- Using the system on non-standardized roads, such as roads under construction or private roads
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road

Warning

As a feature for driving comfort, and not for preventing collision, Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control has a limited maximum deceleration that is less than the maximum deceleration required by Autonomous Emergency Brake and manual driving scenarios. Therefore, never rely solely on Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control to decelerate the vehicle when avoiding a collision.

Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control may fail to stop your vehicle or maintain a safe distance from the lead vehicle when the relative speed between your vehicle and the lead vehicle is great. In this case, press the brake pedal immediately for your safety. Do not rely on Adaptive Cruise Control to bring your vehicle to a full stop following the stationary vehicle or the lead vehicle in this situation.

Enabling Adaptive Cruise Control

- Middle button : activate or exit Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Up button: increase or resume the cruising speed
- Down button: decrease the cruising speed
- Left button: decrease the following distance
- Right button: increase the following distance

When the operating conditions of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) are met, press the Middle button on the left side of the steering wheel to activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can be enabled at the vehicle speed of 0-180 km/h (0-110 mph).

- If the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h (20 mph), 30 km/h (20 mph) will be set as the cruising speed
- If the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h (20 mph) but not higher than 180 km/h (110 mph), the current vehicle speed will be set as the cruising speed

When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is activated, you can release the accelerator pedal to maintain the set cruising speed.

- If there is a lead vehicle, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will adjust the speed of your vehicle according to the speed and distance of the lead vehicle, and the maximum speed will not exceed the cruising speed
- When there is no vehicle ahead, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will quickly adjust the speed of your vehicle to the cruising speed

When driving by using Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), you can depress the accelerator pedal hard at any time to take over your vehicle in a short amount of time. At this time, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will no longer respond to the target lead vehicle, and your vehicle will be completely under your control. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle will return to the cruising speed.

When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) actively accelerates your vehicle, the accelerator pedal will not move. When Adaptive Cruise Control decelerates your vehicle, the brake pedal may move.

After you exit Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) by pressing the Middle button on the left side of the steering wheel or depressing the brake pedal, you can activate it again by pressing the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel, and you can restore the vehicle speed to the previously set cruising speed. If you press the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel while depressing the accelerator pedal, the current speed will be set as the cruising speed. The maximum set speed is 180 km/h (110 mph).

Operating Conditions of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC):

- The high-definition camera, LiDAR and radar feature normally, and the field of vision is clear
- No components of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) are faulty
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, such as:
  - The driver is seated
  - The driver's hands on the steering wheel
  - The driver has fastened the seat belt
  - All doors are closed
  - Your vehicle is in gear position D
  - The driver does not step on the brake pedal
  - Anti-lock brake system, traction control system and vehicle stability control system are not triggered
- The feature cannot be activated when the steering angle of the steering wheel is too large
- The speed does not exceed 180 km/h or 110 mph

Warning

When driving with this feature on, if the system detects that you are not in a normal driving state (e.g., you are not holding the steering wheel for an extended period of time, you are distracted and fatigued for an extended period of time, or you are out of your seat), it will activate Emergency Active Stop when the normal operating conditions for the system are met.

Disabling Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is deactivated when:

- The steering wheel button is pressed
- The brake pedal is depressed

In addition, when the conditions for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) are not met, it will be automatically deactivated. You can take control of the vehicle immediately after Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated.

After Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is deactivated, the vehicle may slow down due to regenerative braking, and will not be able to maintain the set distance to the lead vehicle.

Warning

Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control may be canceled suddenly due to unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and be prepared to take over at any time.

Adjusting Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Speed

When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Driver Assistance > Adjust Speed by Steering Wheel Button**, and select the appropriate way to adjust the cruising speed.

The cruising speed can be adjusted by:

- Press +1, press+hold +5
  - Press the Up or Down button on the left side of the steering wheel to increase/decrease the cruise speed by 1 km/h
  - Press+hold the Up or Down button on the left side of the steering wheel to increase/decrease the cruise speed to the closest 5 km/h increment, that is, if the speed is 82 km/h, press+hold the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel, and the speed will be increased to 85 km/h
- Press+hold +1, press +5
  - Press+hold the Up or Down button on the left side of the steering wheel to increase/decrease the cruise speed by 1 km/h
  - Press the Up or Down button on the left side of the steering wheel to increase/decrease the cruise speed to the closest 5 km/h increment, that is, if the speed is 82 km/h, press the Up button on the left side of the steering wheel, and the speed will be increased to 85 km/h

The maximum set speed for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is 180 km/h, or 110 mph.

The minimum set speed for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is 30 km/h, but it allows the vehicle to decelerate to 0 km/h when following the vehicle ahead.

Caution

- To activate it for the first time, press +1.
- The cruise speed cannot be adjusted via NOMI.

Adjusting Following Time and Distance with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active or in standby, the following time and distance can be adjusted in 5 levels.

- Press the Right button on the left side of the steering wheel to set the following time and distance to a farther setting
- Press the Left button on the left side of the steering wheel to set the following time and distance to a closer setting

Caution

When the time distance to the lead vehicle is set shorter, Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control will respond more aggressively, which may cause a level of discomfort.

Warning

It is your responsibility to determine and maintain a safe following distance at all times. Do not rely solely on Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control to maintain an accurate or appropriate following distance.

Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD)

An intelligent driving status indicator light has been added next to the real-time vehicle speed on the left side of the digital instrument cluster. The intelligent driving status indicator light can be used to understand the features of intelligent driving that can be activated now and that is running now, as well as the cruise speed status of intelligent driving.

	Active state	To be activated	Loss of lateral control
NOP+	80 MAX		80 MAX
Lane Centering Control (LCC)	80 MAX		80 MAX
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	80 MAX		None

When Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) displays the “Please drive with caution, the distance to the vehicle ahead is too close” warning, it means that there is a risk of collision because the maximum deceleration available to Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can no longer maintain a safe distance, and you need to take control of the brake pedal and steering wheel immediately to control the speed and direction of the vehicle.

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Warning

If you encounter a dangerous situation, do not wait for a warning before taking action and take over immediately.

Lead Vehicle Start Alert

When the vehicle is stopped when following the lead vehicle under Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- If the lead vehicle starts, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will follow it and actively start the vehicle as well. You need to pay attention to the surrounding environment at all times to prevent collision accidents from occurring;
- When the vehicle is stopped for no more than about 5 minutes when following the lead vehicle, starting while following is available under Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC);
- After the vehicle is stopped for about 5 minutes when following the lead vehicle, Electric Parking Brake (EPB) will be activated and Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will be deactivated;
- If the system detects obstacles ahead that may affect driving, making it impossible to follow the lead vehicle, you may, after checking the surroundings, reactivate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) by stepping on the accelerator pedal

Warning

Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect other traffic participants in all situations, as this feature may fail, work improperly, or work with delay under the impact of multiple factors.

You must always pay attention to the traffic and road conditions. Never rely solely on Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control to start the vehicle to follow, otherwise personal injury or vehicle damage may occur.

Smart Speed Assist

Once activated, when the vehicle is driving on a highway or overpass under Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it will alert you to change the speed limit when a change is detected in the road speed limit. You can manually confirm to keep the cruise speed consistent with the current road speed limit.

Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assistance > Smart Speed Assist** to turn this feature on or off.

Warning

Intelligent Speed Control is only a supplement to, and does not function as a substitute for, your visual observation. Never rely solely on the speed limit information recognized by Traffic Sign Recognition.

When the speed of the vehicle exceeds the speed limit of the road, you will be visually alerted of overspeed.

Warning

- As a driving assist feature, Intelligent Speed Control cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Traffic Sign Recognition and Intelligent Speed Control if it is safe.
- Currently, Intelligent Speed Control does not work in complex road conditions such as ramps.
- You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.
- Intelligent Speed Control combines the speed limit information from the map to display the speed limit information on the digital instrument cluster. No speed limit information will be displayed when no speed limit information source is available from the map.

Caution

The dynamic environment simulation display can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the dynamic environment simulation display.

Overtaking Assist Provided by Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

When the vehicle is following the lead vehicle under Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), if you turn on the left turn light and steer the steering wheel in an attempt to overtake another vehicle, it will activate acceleration assist to accelerate up to the set cruising speed.

Overtaking Assist can be activated when:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active and has detected a vehicle traveling in the same direction ahead
- The current vehicle speed is higher than 50 km/h, but not over the set cruising speed
- There is no lane marking or the lane marking is a dashed line on the side of the lane change
- The vehicle is at a safe distance from the vehicle ahead
- The hazard warning light is not on
- No malfunction with the turn light

When the above conditions are met, you can activate Overtaking Assist by toggling the left turn light lever to the bottom. When you turn the steering wheel to the left, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will maintain the distance to the lead vehicle, but will allow you to drive slightly closer than the set following distance. During a lane change, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will accelerate up to the set cruising speed without you stepping on the accelerator pedal.

Caution

Your vehicle may decelerate when Overtaking Assist is in operation due to the lead vehicle in the current or target lane, which is highlighted on the digital instrument cluster.

Overtaking Assist feature will be deactivated, but Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will remain active, when:

- A lane change is completed
- Overtaking Assist has been active for too long

- The turn light lever is toggled back before the lane change

Caution

When the operating conditions for Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control are not met, Overtaking Assist and Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control will cancel.

Caution

Overtaking Assist only assists in adjusting the vehicle's driving speed, and cannot control the steering. You must manually control the steering at all times.

Caution

Overtaking Assist is unable to distinguish your intention to overtake from your intention to turn left.

Warning

Overtaking Assist only detects the vehicle in front of you. In order to ensure your safety, you must pay attention to your surroundings before and during the process of overtaking.

Warning

When using Overtaking Assist, you should be aware of the possibility of sudden acceleration or a lack of acceleration, and always be prepared to press or fully press the accelerator pedal to take over. Do not rely solely on this feature to overtake other vehicles.

Warning

Overtaking Assist may fail to operate as intended in certain situations, including but not limited to:

- Approaching a left-hand exit
- Driving on winding roads
- The front vehicle's status in the current or target lane changes suddenly, e.g. sudden deceleration
- Obstacles to the side or rear of the vehicle

Precautions and Restrictions

The following situations may lead to a camera recognition disorder, affect the performance of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), or even cause deactivation, which include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of camera
- Blocked or dirty camera
- Reduced recognition capability due to dim surrounding environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel
- Sudden changes in ambient brightness, such as tunnel entrances or exits
- Large shadows cast by buildings, landscapes or large vehicles
- Camera directly exposed to light
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead that falls onto your vehicle
- Water, dust, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, wiper, ice, snow, etc. on the windshield in front of the camera
- Wet roads

The following situations may lead to a LiDAR recognition disorder, affect the performance of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), or even cause deactivation, which include but are not limited to:

- Changed installation position of LiDAR
- Severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, haze
- Exhaust gas, water spray, snow or dust lifted up by the vehicle ahead
- Driving on wet or waterlogged roads
- Water, dust, transparent vehicle coverings, color-changing film, micro-scratches, oil sludge, dirt, ice, snowfall and other obstructions on the LiDAR window
- Overheating of the LiDAR caused by prolonged sun exposure
- Due to the limitation of LiDAR characteristics, in rare special cases, false alarms may occur for the traffic signs/high-speed anti-collision barrels in high-speed/elevated sections

The following situations may lead to a radar recognition disorder, affect the performance of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), or even cause deactivation, which include but are not limited to:

- Misplaced or blocked radar, or covered with mud, ice and snow, metal plates, tapes, labels, leaves, etc.
- The radar or the area surrounding it is impacted due to a vehicle collision, scratch, etc.
- Extreme weather such as heavy rain, snow, fog, which may affect radar performance
- Due to the limitation of radar target recognition characteristics, in rare special circumstances, false alarms may occur for some metal barriers, green belts, cement walls, etc.

Only the vehicles that meet the conditions will be responded by Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC). The targets below cannot be guaranteed to be identified, and may trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Transverse vehicles
- Motorcycles, tricycles

The targets below will not trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers
- Oncoming vehicles

- Bicycles
- Other non-vehicle objects

Caution

- This feature does not guarantee the recognition of special-shaped targets, especially at night or a poor lighting environment where the driver needs to pay extra attention. Such vehicles include vehicles with a covered rear or irregularly-shaped rear, vehicles with a rear below a certain height, and unladen carriers.
- This feature may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

The following situations may cause late recognition and response in Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) because the target is not directly ahead, which include but are not limited to:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will not respond to targets in the sensor blind zone. For example, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) cannot detect the blind spots at the corners of the vehicle and the blind spots on the sides of the vehicle
- When approaching or turning along a road, some targets may be mis-selected or missed, resulting in unexpected acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle
- When going uphill, it may miss a target or misjudge the distance to the lead vehicle. When going downhill, it may accelerate the vehicle, causing it to exceed the cruising speed
- When only part of the body of a vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of your vehicle (especially when it's a larger vehicle cutting in, like a bus, truck, etc.), it may not be able to recognize the target in a responsive manner and you need to take over in time
- When your vehicle abruptly cuts into the rear of the vehicle ahead, or another vehicle abruptly cuts into or out of the front of your vehicle, it may not be able to recognize the target in a responsive manner and you need to take over in time

Caution

- In rare cases, this feature may accelerate your vehicle even when it is not necessary or intended due to a change in, or loss of, the target (especially when cornering or changing lanes).
- In rare cases, this feature may apply the vehicle's brakes when it is not necessary or intended due to the detection of vehicles or objects, or a change in, or loss of, a stationary target in the adjacent lane (especially when cornering or changing lanes).
- When following the lead vehicle, if your vehicle or the lead vehicle switches out of the current lane, acceleration may be restricted by this feature for a certain period of time for your safety. You can take over by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Warning

This feature cannot guarantee accurate recognition of the target in all situations. If you find that the display of "target lead vehicle" on the digital instrument cluster does not match the actual situation, please take control of your vehicle in a timely manner. Which include but are not limited to:

- There is actually a lead vehicle, but the digital instrument cluster does not display the target vehicle.
- There is actually no lead vehicle, but the digital instrument cluster shows a lead vehicle.

When driving in special or complex road conditions, it is not recommended to activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) because it may affect the performance of Adaptive Cruise Control, or even cause deactivation, which include but are not limited to:

- Waterlogged roads, muddy roads, potholes, ice- and snow-covered roads, roads with speed bumps, roads with obstacles
- Traffic conditions with a lot of pedestrians, bicycles or animals
- Complex and changeable traffic conditions, such as busy intersections, expressway ramps, congested roads
- Winding and turning roads, rapid turning roads
- Uphill and downhill roads
- Rough roads
- Narrow roads
- Tunnel entrances and exits
- Non-standard roads
- Roads without a median

In the following situations, if the vehicle speed is too high relative to the lead vehicle, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) may be subject to limited control, which will result in an inability to maintain the safe distance in a responsive manner, which include but are not limited to:

- Sudden maneuvers of the vehicle ahead (such as sudden turns, acceleration, deceleration, etc.)
- Another vehicle abruptly cutting in or out of the front of your vehicle
- Your vehicle abruptly cutting in behind the vehicle ahead
- Your vehicle driving towards a stationary or slow-moving target at a high speed

It may not be able to provide sufficient braking force in the following situations, which include but are not limited to:

- The brake feature cannot fully work (such as when brake parts are too cold, too hot, wet, etc.)
- Improper vehicle maintenance (excessive wear of the brake or tires, abnormal tire pressure, etc.)
- The vehicle is driving on special roads (such as uphill and downhill, water, mud, potholes, ice and snow roads, etc.)

Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully covered all the situations that may affect the normal operation of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Auto High Beams (AHB)

Your vehicle will turn off the high beam headlights in a timely manner when it meets and passes other vehicles, the driving distance between the vehicle behind and ahead in the same direction is close or the vehicle enters a road section with good lighting conditions by detecting headlights, taillights of the vehicle ahead, street lights and other information through the front camera, so as not to dazzle the other vehicles or pedestrians. Turn on the high beam headlights in time when coming upon and entering an area with poor lighting or low visibility to ensure that the road ahead is illuminated.

- Turn on the high beam headlights: the outside environment is dark and there are no other traffic participants ahead
- Turn off the high beam headlights: the outside environment is bright and there are other traffic participants ahead

You can see the following information through the digital instrument cluster:

- The Auto High Beams (AHB) are enabled
- The high beam headlights are turned on
- The low beam headlights are turned on

Note

When Auto High Beams are activated, pull the lever towards you to turn on high beams immediately. Releasing the lever will switch the headlights back to low beams and return Auto High Beams to standby status.

Warning

- As a driving assist feature, Auto High Beams cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Please use the high and low beams in compliance with applicable traffic safety laws and regulations. Do not turn on Auto High Beams unless it will not cause any violation of applicable laws and regulations.
- The driver should always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely in compliance with applicable traffic safety laws and regulations.

Enable/Disable the Auto High Beams (AHB)

1. Go to the Settings page from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Light > Headlights**. Select AUTO to turn on the Automatic Headlights.
2. Go to the Settings page from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Light > Auto High Beams (AHB)** to enable or disable this function.
3. When the Auto High Beams (AHB) are enabled:

   Push the light control lever forward to activate the Auto High Beams (AHB) function.

   Push the light control lever forward or pull it backward again to enter the standby status of the function.
4. When the Auto High Beams (AHB) are disabled:

   Push the light control lever forward to turn on the high beam headlights.

   Push the light control lever forward or pull it backward again to turn off the high beam headlights.

Automatic control may not be performed under, but also not be limited to, the following situations:

- Turn on the turn light.
- Turn the steering wheel hard.
- Pass a sharp turn.
- The wiper is set to its maximum speed.
- The fog lights are on.

Only targets that satisfy the conditions will be responded to by the Auto High Beams (AHB). The targets below will not trigger a response, which include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Cyclists (including but not limited to bicycles, motorcycles, electric bikes, tricycles, etc.)
- Other non-vehicle objects

Warning

This feature may be impaired in heavy rain, snow, fog and other extreme weather conditions, or when the camera is blocked. Please drive with caution.

Warning

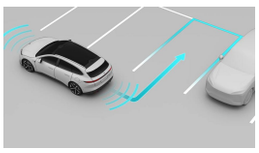
It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings do not cover all conditions that may affect the proper operation of the Auto High Beams (AHB) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Auto High Beams (AHB) system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion (S-APA with Fusion) uses surround-view cameras and ultrasonic sensors to detect ground markings or parking spaces between two vehicles, so as to provide parking assistance.

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion supports perpendicular parking, parallel parking, and angled parking, but does not support parking in three-dimensional parking spaces.



Caution

To ensure the normal and safe operation of this feature, please make sure to fasten your seat belt during the use of this feature.

Warning

Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion on roads which are sloped or uneven.

Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion while the vehicle is being charged.

Warning

The performance of Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion depends on the capabilities of the surround view camera and ultrasonic sensors to detect and identify the environment.

Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if any one of the two side mirrors, the surround view camera, and the ultrasonic sensors is damaged or in an abnormal position.

Warning

You should pay special attention to pedestrians, children, and animals near your vehicle, and other fine, pointed, low or suspended obstacles undetected by the ultrasonic sensors, such as parking locks, low stone blocks, traffic cones, low cylinders, thin rods, pointed objects, corners of walls, and square columns in parking lots.

Warning

As a driving assist feature, Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather, road, and light conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and decide to use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion or not after your safety is ensured.

You should always be ready to take over if you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or vehicle are not suitable for enabling Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion, or there are other safety risks. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for parking safely and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Enabling Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion parks the vehicle as follows:

1. Parking space search: Enter the Dual-view Image interface and open Parking Space Search. Drive forward slowly at a speed of lower than 16 km/h, and stop after the digital instrument cluster shows that a parking space has been found. Keep the brake on, check and choose a safe and suitable parking space;
    - Manual parking space search: Enter the Dual-view Image interface and open Parking Space Search. Drive forward slowly at a speed of lower than 16 km/h, and stop after the digital instrument cluster shows that a parking space has been found. Keep the brake on, check and choose a safe and suitable parking space;
    - Auto parking space search: When the road conditions and system conditions are met, drive forward slowly at a speed of lower than 16 km/h. When a parking space is found in the background, the Parking Assist button will appear on the Map interface. Touch the button and stop the vehicle according to the text prompts on the interface. Keep the brake on, check and choose a safe and suitable parking space;
2. Parking: Select a safe and suitable parking space, and park the vehicle according to the text prompts on the interface. Keep checking the surroundings to ensure that the vehicle is parked safely;
3. Parking completed. The Dual-view Image interface will prompt Parking Completed.

Details are as follows:

1. Parking Space Search

    Before searching for a parking space, the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

    - The vehicle speed is lower than 16 km/h
    - The vehicle is in the D or R gear position
    - All doors are closed
    - The driver is seated
    - ACC/LCC not enabled
    - Ultrasonic sensors and surround-view cameras feature properly with a clear view
    - No system error
    - Anti-lock brake system, traction control system and vehicle stability control system are not triggered
    - Traction control system, vehicle stability control system are not disabled
    - Not available in ECO+ Mode

    When the above conditions are met, you can initiate Parking Space Search in any of the following ways:

    - Where the parking camera is off, say a command like “I want to park” or “Park the vehicle” to wake up NOMI, which will open the Dual-view Image interface directly and enter Parking Space Search
    - Swipe right on the main interface of the center display to enter the Quick Access interface, tap **Parking Assist**, enter the Dual-view Image interface and open Parking Space Search

- Put your vehicle in Reverse, enter the image interface, and tap the button in the upper left corner to open Parking Space Search
- Tap the parking camera to enter the 360° image interface, tap the button in the upper left corner to open Parking Space Search

After turning on Parking Space Search, keep the vehicle at a distance of 0.5m to 1.5m to the target parking space, and drive forward slowly at a speed of lower than 16 km/h to search for a parking space.

During the search for a parking space, when a white “P” appears on the left or right side of your vehicle on the screen, it means that the system has found a parking space on the corresponding side. If a “P” appears on both sides, it means that the system has found parking spaces on both sides.

Stop the vehicle at this time, keep the brake on, and check whether the parking space is safe and suitable. If multiple parking spaces are found, you can manually select the appropriate parking space on the Dual-view Image interface.

Note

After the vehicle starts searching a parking space, if you shift into REVERSE and reverse the vehicle, it will continue searching.

Caution

When the vehicle's speed is above 16 km/h, the parking space search will be canceled.

Caution

When searching for parking spaces, parking may not be successful if the vehicle’s direction has significantly deviated from the direction of the road.

Caution

Parking spaces on narrow roads or spaces that are too narrow may not be selected due to a lack of space.

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion does not support parking space search and lateral shift in a parking space.

Caution

Semi-Automatic Parking Assist can be used to identify the barrier-free parking space sign in the parking space. After successful identification, the barrier-free parking space will display the corresponding icon in the parking space page at the lower left. The identification of the barrier-free sign in the non-parking space, such as erected metal plates and text signs, is not supported now. In addition, this type of parking space may be misidentified. Please select a parking space as required according to the actual situation.

Warning

- You must always check and confirm if the detected parking space is safe and suitable for parking. Do not rely solely on Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion to search for suitable parking spaces.
- This feature is not available on high-speed roads and urban expressways.
- Never use this feature in the Trailer Mode.
- The system may misidentify parking spaces on roads, at entrances, in bushes, etc. You need to determine if the parking space is suitable.
- Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion cannot determine if the detected parking space is legitimate. You need to confirm the legitimacy before starting the parking procedure.

2. Parking

Select a safe and suitable parking space, release the steering wheel and brake pedal according to the text prompts on the interface, then initiate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion. During the parking process, the interface will display the current gear and the remaining length of the route in this gear as a reference. Keep checking the surroundings to ensure the safety of the parking process.

After selecting a parking space, you can de-select it by tapping the space again before releasing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is parked, the “P” on the left or right side of the vehicle in the digital instrument cluster will turn green.

Caution

Please only release the brake pedal when you receive the prompt “Release the brake pedal and the steering wheel” on the center display. Otherwise, Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist will cancel and the vehicle will move backwards.

Warning

Before releasing the brake pedal, make sure that your hands and arms do not interfere with the steering wheel to avoid any injuries caused by its rapid movement. When parking, always be prepared to apply the brakes to pause the process or take over.

Warning

Initiating Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion in a narrow parking space may affect the performance of the sensors, which can increase the risk of damaging the vehicle or surrounding objects.

Warning

You are responsible for driving safely. Always pay attention to your surroundings when parking, ensure that the parking process is safe, and be prepared to take over at any time. In particular, you should pay special attention to pedestrians, children, or animals near your vehicle, and other fine, pointed, low, or suspended obstacles the ultrasonic sensors may not be able to detect.

Any retrofits or modifications made to the steering wheel, including but not limited to steering wheel cover, steering wheel modification, and counterweight ring, will increase the parking risk caused by failed or affected Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion.

The center display only shows available parking spaces that Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist is capable of parking in, which are subject to both the size of the parking space and its surroundings. If you spot any obstacles that suddenly appear around the car while parking, take over immediately as the system may not apply the brakes in time.

3. Parking Completed

The vehicle is properly parked when the Dual-view Image interface prompts “Parking Completed”, and the “P” on the left or right side of the vehicle in the digital instrument cluster turns green.

After parking, you may need to make further adjustments to the vehicle in order to ensure that the vehicle is in the best parking position.

Before leaving, make sure that the electric parking brake is activated and the vehicle is in Park gear.

Caution

Parking may be finished in advance due to the surroundings. In this case, you may need to adjust the vehicle’s position manually.

Pausing Parking

During the process of parking under Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion, you can lightly step on the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down without disengaging the feature; only when you keep stepping on the brake pedal until the speed is reduced to 0 km/h, will the feature be suspended. In addition, stepping on the accelerator pedal during parking will also suspend the parking.

If you actively intervene with the steering wheel, the parking feature will be suspended.

Intervention includes, but is not limited to, the process of perpendicularly backing into a parking space with Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion active, if the system detects that there may be a safety risk or the parking result cannot be guaranteed, the system will pause parking and ask you whether to continue parking.

After parking is paused, check the surroundings to ensure that it is safe to continue parking, then release the brake pedal, and tap the “Resume Parking” button on the center display to re-activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion.

Caution

Parking may be impaired if you pause too many times during the parking process.

Disabling Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion

Disabling Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion

You can deactivate the parking operation process manually in the following ways. Take over control of the speed and direction of your vehicle after actively disengaging Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion:

- Step on the brake pedal and shift gears
- When Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion is suspended, tap the “Stop Parking” button on the Dual-view Image interface
- Actively exit the Dual-view Image interface

In addition, when Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion is active, the following situations will cause the ongoing parking to stop, requiring you to take over the vehicle in time:

- Too close to an obstacle
- Front trunk, liftgate or any door is open
- Electric parking brake is activated
- Anti-lock brake system, traction control system and vehicle stability control system triggered
- Driver leaves seat
- Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion has been suspended for more than about 30 seconds
- Too many front and rear adjustments
- The overall parking process has timed out
- System fault

When Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion is deactivated abnormally, the “P” on the left or right side of the vehicle in the digital instrument cluster will turn red.

Precautions and Restrictions

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion may not be able to function as expected when the vehicle is driving under the following road conditions, which include but are not limited to:

- Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion when the road surface is slanted or sloped. Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion is only designed for use on road surfaces with no gradients.
- Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if the road surface is uneven or there are steps on the road. Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion is designed for use on flat roads only.
- Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if there is water, mud, potholes, ice and snow, speed bumps, and obstacles on the road.
- The curb material is special or cannot be detected. If parked improperly, the tires and wheel rims of the vehicle are at risk of being damaged by the curb, and you need to promptly take over the vehicle.
- When the road surface is slanted or the slope is beyond the supported range, the success rate of Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion cannot be guaranteed.
- If the angle of the slanted parking space exceeds the supported range, the parking space will not be released, and the success rate for parking cannot be guaranteed.

Ultrasonic sensors may have limited detection of the following obstacles, requiring you to be ready to take over the vehicle at any time, so as to prevent property damage or personal injury, which include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians, children, animals, etc.
- Thin, pointed, short, and suspended obstacles, such as ground locks, low stone piers, low cylinders, thin rods, sharp objects, etc.
- Wall corners, parking lot columns, etc.

Ultrasonic sensors may have limited detection in the following situations, resulting in Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion being unable to function or not functioning as expected, which includes but is not limited to:

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are damaged, misplaced, or obscured (such as by mud or ice)
- Severe weather like rain, snow, fog, and haze affect the performance of ultrasonic sensors
- Sensors are affected by other electrical equipment or installations that can cause interference

The surround-view camera may have limited detection in the following situations, resulting in Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion being unable to function or not functioning as expected, which includes but is not limited to:

- The left and right side mirrors or the front and rear of the vehicle are damaged, resulting in an abnormal position of the surround-view camera
- The surround-view camera is soiled (such as by mud or ice) or obscured
- Under strong sunlight or dappled tree shade
- Reflective ground or water on the ground
- Poor lighting conditions (dark), strong reflection from the ground, or poor visibility (heavy rain, heavy snow, dense fog)
- A parking space of an unconventional size (too narrow or too wide), or a tile-paved parking space
- Worn, unclear, covered, or overlapping parking space lines
- Cylindrical, square and other shaped pillars near the parking space
- Parking space at a corner
- The system may not be able to judge and exclude parking spaces with no-parking markings, cones, restricted-stop signs, ground locks, or other special parking spaces
- The system may not be able to exclude parking spaces with obstacles, such as pedestrians, bicycles, tricycles, low debris, bricks, etc.

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion may not be able to function as expected when the vehicle is driving in the following situations, which include but are not limited to:

- Any addition or modification of the steering wheel, which will increase the risk of parking and may cause the Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion to not work, or not function as expected, which includes but is not limited to: installing a leather steering wheel cover, or modifying the steering wheel or weight ring, etc.
- Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if a trailer is attached to the rear of the vehicle.
- Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a spare wheel.
- Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if a loaded object protrudes into the area surrounding the vehicle.
- Non-original tires or low tire pressure will affect the driving trajectory of Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion. When Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion is active, make sure the tires are original and properly inflated.
- After changing the tire size and specifications, you need to update the relevant parameters at the After-sales Services. Currently only the tire models specified by us are supported; any modification of the vehicle's tire size and specifications may affect parking performance.

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion may not be able to function as expected due to the following target parking space conditions, which include but are not limited to:

- The target parking space is adjacent to the roadside fence, high walls, street lights, trees, bushes, pillars, suspended obstacles such as railings, distribution boxes, chargers, etc., which will affect the final parking effect and may even cause vehicle damage.
- The target parking space is on a curve, which will affect the final parking effect.
- Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion when the target parking space is at an angle.
- Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion when there are obstacles such as unlocked ground locks, cones, shopping carts, and lampposts in the target parking space.

Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion when the following conditions may lead to poor vision of the observed environment while driving, which include but are not limited to:

- Any one of the left and right side mirrors is blurred, damaged or in an abnormal position.
- The surround-view camera is blurry, damaged, or in an unusual position.
- Inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.) results in poor visibility.
- Poor vision at night or due to insufficient light.

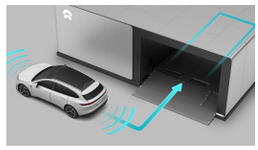
Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion repeatedly in the following situations, which include but are not limited to:

- After vigorous driving or repeated parking operations, which may trigger overheating protection of the steering system. Do not activate Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion for prolonged periods of time or repeatedly.

The above warnings, precautions and restrictions have not fully covered all the situations that may affect the normal operation of the Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Power Swap with Assisted Parking (PSAP)

The Power Swap with Assisted Parking (PSAP) can help drivers park their vehicles in the Power Swap Station without any steering wheel input, braking, acceleration, or gear shift operations.



Search for the Power Swap Station on the map, or open the power-up assistant to screen the Power Swap Station:

- If you are within the order placing range of the Power Swap Station, directly tap to place an order;
- If you are not in the order placing range, navigate to the Power Swap Station and place an order when you arrive nearby.

Caution

- The locations of your vehicle and the NIO app are checked during order placement. An order cannot be placed successfully unless your vehicle is within 200m of the power swap station.
- In the event of an order placement failure due to unavailable vehicle network, please try again after the network resumes or consult the field specialist.
- Please read the Agreement and Disclaimer before placing an order.

When the order is placed successfully, a power swapping serial number will be generated to enter the queuing sequence. You can check the battery's charging status, the number of people in the current queue, the estimated waiting time and other information on the order interface of the mobile App and the vehicle.

After the lead vehicle finishes the power swap and leaves the Power Swap Station, the Power Swap Station will send a number calling command after checking to notify you to enter the station for the power swap. Tap the "Activate Power Swap Process" button on the center display to start the parking process.

Caution

- Please wait for your turn near the power swap station and pay attention to the queuing status on your center display or NIO app. If you miss your turn, please contact the field specialist in time.
- If you have to leave the power swap station for some reason, please pay attention to the queuing status on the NIO app or cancel the order in time.
- Please avoid the lane in front of the station when waiting for power swap.

The Power Swap with Assisted Parking (PSAP) feature may not operate as expected in the following situations:

- The material that the curb is made out of is not stone or the curb is undetectable. If parked improperly, the tires and wheel rims of the vehicle are at risk of being damaged by the curb, and you need to promptly take over the vehicle.
- Any addition or modification of the steering wheel, which will increase the risk of parking and may cause the Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion to not work, or not function as expected, which includes but is not limited to: installing a leather steering wheel cover, or modifying the steering wheel or weight ring, etc.
- One or more ultrasonic sensors are contaminated or obstructed (e.g. sludge or ice and snow).
- Weather conditions (heavy rain, snow, fog, extreme heat or cold, etc.) interfere with the operation of the sensor.
- Reflective ground or water on the ground
- Sensors are affected by other electrical equipment or installations that can cause interference
- The road surfaces are uneven, have grass planting bricks, grooves, etc.
- It is equipped with snow chains or spare wheels.
- The loaded objects protrude around the vehicle.
- Any one of the left and right side mirrors is damaged or in an abnormal position.

Caution

- After the tire size is changed, you need to go to the service center to update the relevant parameters. Currently, only the official tire models are supported. Any modification related to the vehicle tire size and performance may affect the parking performance.
- Parking may be impaired if you pause too many times during the parking process.
- High-speed driving or multiple parking operations may trigger overheat protection for the steering system. Do not use this feature repeatedly for an extended period.
- When the target parking space is close to roadside fences, high walls, street lights, trees, bushes, pillars, or overhanging obstacles such as railings, power distribution boxes and charging connectors, these obstacles may affect the parking result and even cause vehicle damage.

Parking into the Power Swap Station

After tapping the "Activate Power Swap Process" button, please enter the starting area for the power swap in the specified direction at a speed lower than 18 km/h according to the vehicle's instructions.

Caution

- A high speed may cause positioning detection failure. Please keep the speed below 18 km/h.
- Please drive as instructed by the arrows on the ground and avoid vehicles and pedestrians around.
- If positioning detection fails, please contact the field specialist to take over your vehicle and manually reverse for power swap.

After entering the starting area for the power swap, when the Dynamic Environment Simulation and Display (ESD) displays and NOMI plays a voice prompt saying that the vehicle has been successfully located, please press the brake pedal to keep the vehicle stationary and wait for positioning detection.

Make sure your seat belt is fastened and the door is closed while you wait in the starting area.

Tap the "Assist in Parking Into the Power Swap Station" button. When you see "Please release the brake and steering wheel", follow the instructions to start parking in the Power Swap Station.

- Parking will be suspended if obstacles are detected during the process.
- If parking is suspended due to systemic reasons or active intervention during the process, please confirm that there are no obstacles in the surrounding area and manually resume the parking.

If you are unable to continue parking, you can select "Terminate Parking", and the on-site specialist will manually swap power for the vehicle after you quit. If the Power Swap Station is unattended, users can choose to park automatically or manually again, or contact the specialist.

After parking is completed, swap power for the vehicle as instructed on the interface.

Caution

Before or during parking into the power swap station, please always pay attention to your surroundings to confirm that there are no passing vehicles, pedestrians, children, etc. and ensure parking safety.

Please do not take over the accelerator pedal, unbuckle the seat belt, leave the driver’s seat, or open the door during parking into the power swap station.

Starting/Ending the Power Swap

After parking successfully in place, it will automatically enter the one-button Power Swap process. Please read the instructions on the vehicle's screen carefully and tap to start the power swap.

The vehicle will automatically adjust to the power swap status, and switch off the screen to start the power swap.

Warning

If your vehicle is not parked in place or failed to be automatically adjusted, please adjust your vehicle as instructed by the field specialist.

The windows or air conditioning cannot be adjusted during the power swap. Please adjust them to proper positions in advance.

During the power swap, it is normal that the vehicle jerks slightly with some noise and some warning lights are on temporarily.

During the process, do not try to open any door, shift gears, press the brake pedal, or perform other actions, which may cancel the power swap abnormally.

After the power swap is completed, the vehicle's screen will light up to indicate that the power swap has been completed. At this time, it can drive away from the Power Swap Station without any problems.

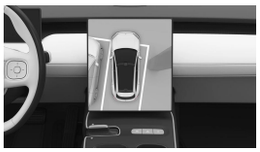
Caution

Please pay attention to any vehicles or pedestrians in front for safety before exiting the power swap station.

The above warnings and precautions have not fully covered all the conditions that may affect the normal operation of the Power Swap with Assisted Parking (PSAP) system. There are many factors that may interfere with the Power Swap with Assisted Parking (PSAP) system. In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Side Distance Indication System (SDIS)

The Side Distance Indication System (SDIS) feature monitors the front of the vehicle when it is driving at a low speed with ultrasonic sensors. When approaching obstacles, the parking camera interface and scenarios like assisting in judging the parking space or passing restricted roads will be automatically called up.



Warning

Side Distance Indication System serves as a reference only, and cannot substitute your visual observation.

As a driving assist feature, Side Distance Indication System cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. We do not recommend using Side Distance Indication System in bad weather conditions, including but not limited to heavy rain, snow, fog, and haze.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Side Distance Indication System if it is safe.

It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and complies with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

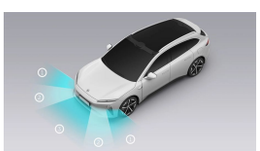
Enabling/Disabling Side Distance Indication System (SDIS) Feature

The Side Distance Indication System (SDIS) feature can be enabled or disabled by the settings button on the parking camera interface. When the Side Distance Indication System (SDIS) feature is enabled, different layout styles can be selected, such as dual-view, full-screen, and picture-in-picture.

When the following working conditions are simultaneously satisfied, the parking camera interface will be automatically activated:

- Vehicle in D gear
- The speed does not exceed 21 km/h
- There are obstacles in any of the areas ahead and they are close to the vehicle

Area and Range of the Side Distance Indication System (SDIS)



Area	Range
1	Distance within 50cm
2	Distance within 80cm
3	Distance within 80cm

You can tap on the upper right side of the parking camera interface and select to turn off the warning tone. At the same time, you should bear all the risks caused by turning off the warning tone.

Automatic exit of the parking camera interface:

- When the obstacle is more than 4.5 seconds away from the vehicle, the parking camera interface will automatically exit.
- When the Side Distance Indication System (SDIS) feature is turned off by tapping the blank area of the parking camera or grabbing the screen with five fingers, it can be temporarily disabled for 3 minutes, and normal use can be resumed 3 minutes later.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds 21 km/h, the Side Distance Indication System (SDIS) feature will return to normal use.
- When the working conditions for the Side Distance Indication System (SDIS) feature are satisfied again, the parking camera interface will be automatically activated.

Warning

It is not recommended to use this feature in the event of extremely severe weather (which includes but is not limited to rain, snow, fog, haze, etc.).

The above warnings do not cover all conditions that may affect the proper operation of the Side Distance Indication System (SDIS). There are many factors that may interfere with the Side Distance Indication System (SDIS). In order to prevent accidents from occurring, you need to drive attentively and focus on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions to ensure safe driving.

Vehicle Health Status

Please keep an eye on the health status of the vehicle to keep your vehicle in the best condition. You can tap **My ET5 Touring** on the main screen of the center display to enter the Vehicle Health Status interface. When you are on this interface, the vehicle can perform a self-check, and show you the current health status of the vehicle once it is finished.

You can also check the power consumption of the current trip on the **My ET5 Touring** interface, and reset the trip by tapping **Reset Accumulated Mileage**.

Maintenance Instructions

To ensure that the vehicle can operate normally and bring a good driving and riding experience, you need to conduct regular vehicle maintenance.

In light of the complexity of vehicle systems and the after-sales service requirements of electric vehicles by national laws and regulations, we recommend you to have your vehicle maintained regularly at NIO's service center. If you have any inquiries about the vehicle inspection, please contact NIO at any time.

Routine Maintenance

Routine maintenance is very important for ensuring your vehicle performance, reducing your costs of vehicle usage, and extending your vehicle service life. It is recommended to go to the NIO Service Center to have maintenance conducted according to the following requirements.

Daily Maintenance

Daily maintenance is a very important measure to ensure driving safety and reduce vehicle malfunctions. The following items shall be checked on a daily basis. If any abnormalities are found, please contact the NIO Service Center in a timely manner for relevant inspections.

- Check that all exterior lights, horns, turn signals, and hazard warning lights work properly.
- Check that the wipers and windshield washers work properly.
- Check that the brakes work properly.
- Check that the seat belts work properly.
- Check if there are abnormally lit indicator lights or text warning messages on the instrument cluster and center display.
- Check the tire pressure and check the tires for damage and abnormal wear.
- Check if there is any abnormal accumulation of fluids under your vehicle body (water accumulation caused by dehumidification in the air conditioning system is normal).
- When driving, pay attention to whether there are abnormal sounds such as bumps or impacts from the bottom of your vehicle body.
- Check your vehicle body for any dirt (such as bird droppings, resin, asphalt spots, insects, and industrial dust) that may damage the paint. If there is any dirt, please clean your vehicle body according to the instructions. Refer to "Exterior Cleaning and Maintenance".
- Check for any dirt in the roof LiDAR area, high-definition camera area, and 360 surround view camera area. If there is any dirt, please clean those areas according to the instructions. Refer to "Exterior Cleaning and Maintenance".
- Replace the smart key battery according to the prompts on the center display of your vehicle.

Regular Maintenance

When driving in normal driving conditions, please go to the NIO Service Center for vehicle maintenance according to the following maintenance items and intervals:

- Gearbox oil: Replace every 200,000 kilometers.
- Brake fluid: Replace every 3 years.
- Coolant: Check the coolant at the latest in the 5th year or at 100,000 kilometers (whichever comes first), and replace it if necessary.

  If the coolant is not replaced, check the coolant every 2 years or 40,000 kilometers (whichever comes first) and replace it if necessary. If the coolant is replaced, check the new coolant in the 5th year or at 100,000 kilometers (whichever comes first), and replace it if necessary.

  When your vehicle is used in extremely cold (below -30 ° C) climates, check the coolant and replace it if necessary.
- Brake pads: At the latest in the 5th year or at 100,000 kilometers (whichever comes first), check your brake pads for wear and replace them if necessary.

  If the brake pads are not replaced, check the brake pads every 2 years or 40,000 kilometers (whichever comes first) and replace them if necessary. If the brake pads are replaced, check the new brake pads for wear in the 5th year or at 100,000 kilometers (whichever comes first), and replace them if necessary.
- Brake discs: At the latest, check your brake discs for wear and replace them if necessary in the 10th year or at 200,000 kilometers (whichever comes first).

If the brake discs are not replaced, check the brake discs every 2 years or 40,000 kilometers (whichever comes first) and replace them if necessary. If the brake discs are replaced, check the new brake discs for wear in the 10th year or at 200,000 kilometers (whichever comes first), and replace them if necessary.

Note

The above "when necessary" refers to when test results do not meet the requirements of NIO technical standards.

Irregular Maintenance

It is recommended to go to the NIO Service Center for the following maintenance when needed based on the conditions of your vehicle and the prompts on the center display:

- Check the wiper strips for aging and scraping, and replace them if necessary.
- Check the air filter according to the prompts on the center display of your vehicle and replace it if necessary.
- Replace the 12V battery according to the prompts on the center display of your vehicle.

Note

The above "when necessary" refers to when test results do not meet the requirements of NIO technical standards.

It is recommended to go to NIO Service Center for a comprehensive vehicle health check when needed based on the usage environment and condition of your vehicle.

Special Maintenance

If your vehicle is frequently driven in the following harsh environments, additional maintenance items or shorter maintenance intervals may be required. For specifics, please contact the NIO Service Center.

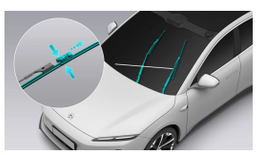
- Driving in a dusty environment.
- Driving in harsh cold (below -20 °C) or high temperature (above 40 °C) environments.
- Driving in humid environments or frequently wading in water.
- Driving on roads with high salt content or corrosive materials.
- Frequent braking or driving in mountainous areas.
- Often used for special purposes such as high loads.
- Retrofitted or modified for special purposes.

Front Wiper Blade Replacement

The front wipers remove rainwater and stains on the windshield (used together with windshield washer fluid). If your vision through the windshield is blurred or if there are multiple obvious water marks after the wiping, which affect the driver's vision and do not disappear, it’s time to replace the wiper blades:

How to replace the front wiper blades:

1. Enter the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Doors and Windows Lock > Wipers > Front Wiper Service Position**, and then the front wipers will move to a position that is convenient for replacement.
2. After the front wipers move to the service position, they can be lifted upwards: press and hold the front wiper blade tab and slide the wiper blade down perpendicular to the wiper arm to remove the wiper blade.

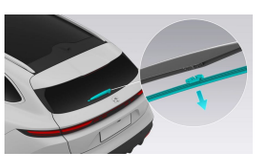
   

3. Insert the new wiper blade until you hear a "click", which indicates that the wiper blade has been properly secured.

Rear Wiper Blade Replacement

The rear wiper blades can remove rain from the rear windshield. The steps to replace the rear wiper blades are as follows:

1. Lift the rear wiper arms up and remove the rear wiper blades.

2. Install new wiper blades and pull them to confirm that they are securely installed.

Windshield Washer Fluid Refill

Warning

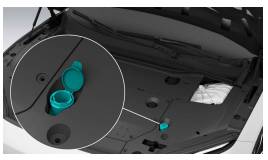
- To add windshield washer fluid, open the hood. If necessary, please contact the NIO Service Center for assistance, so as to avoid injuries resulting from accidental contact with high-voltage components.
- Windshield washer fluid is flammable and irritating. When using it, please avoid open flames or in contact with body parts.
- Windshield washer fluid may damage your vehicle light cover. Please prevent the windshield washer fluid from coming into contact with the light cover.
- Do not add coolant to the windshield washer fluid. Otherwise, it may damage the windshield washer system and paint.

Windshield washer fluid helps maintain good visibility in the front windshield. How to add windshield washer fluid:

1. Pull the hood handle cover plate in the passenger compartment twice to release the hood.

2. Lift the hood.

3. Open the windshield washer fluid cap and add an appropriate amount of washer fluid.

   Caution

   When topping up the windshield washer fluid, please fill the reservoir carefully to avoid spilling and wipe up any spills immediately.

4. Close the lid of the washer fluid pot tightly after adding the washer fluid.
5. When closing the hood, hold the hood with your hands to lower it a little bit first, and then push the hood down until it is completely closed.

Caution

- Do not close the hood forcefully or allow it to fall freely.
- Please add appropriate windshield washer fluid according to the outdoor temperature. In cold weather, please use washer fluid containing antifreeze to avoid reducing the visibility through the windshield.
- When using concentrated windshield washer fluid, please follow the manufacturer's instructions to dilute it with water.
- Do not add water to the ready-to-use windshield washer fluid, or it may cause the washer fluid to freeze and damage the washer fluid reservoir and other components of the washer system.
- When the weather is very cold, it is recommended to add washer fluid to three-quarters of the reservoir to prevent the washer fluid from freezing and expanding, which can damage the washer fluid reservoir.
- Do not add formulated windshield washer fluid containing waterproofing agent or insect-stain removal washer fluid, or it may cause streaks, stains, squeaks, or other noises during wiping.

Coolant Refill

Warning

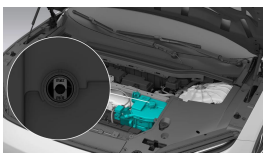
To avoid the risk of high voltage electric shock when opening the hood, please contact NIO to top up the vehicle’s coolant.

Coolant helps the vehicle E-Powertrain System to run at a suitable temperature range. How to refill coolant:

1. Pull the hood handle cover plate in the passenger compartment twice to release the hood.

2. Lift the hood.

3. Open the coolant cap and refill an appropriate amount of coolant (between the MIN level and the MAX level).

4. Close the coolant cap tightly.
5. When closing the hood, hold the hood with your hands to lower it a little bit first, and then push the hood down until it is completely closed.

Caution

Do not slam or drop the hood.

Brake Fluid Refill

Warning

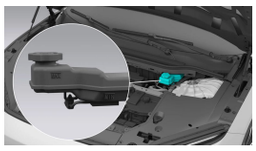
To avoid the risk of high voltage electric shock when opening the hood, please contact NIO to top up the vehicle's brake fluid.

Brake fluid is the medium that transmits brake pressure in the hydraulic brake system. How to add brake fluid:

1. Pull the hood handle cover plate in the passenger compartment twice to release the hood.

2. Lift the hood.

3. Open the brake fluid cap and add an appropriate amount of brake fluid (between the MIN level and the MAX level).



4. Close the brake fluid cap tightly.
5. When closing the hood, hold the hood with your hands to lower it a little bit first, and then push the hood down until it is completely closed.

Caution

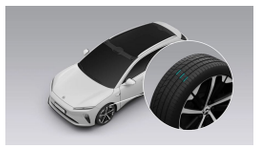
Do not slam or drop the hood.

Tire Inspection and Maintenance

Do not drive on damaged, over-worn, or incorrectly inflated tires. For driving safety, please check the tires on a regular basis:

- Inspect the tires frequently for damage (punctures, cuts, tears, and bulges), and remove foreign matter embedded in the tire tread.
- A puncture will cause the tire to lose pressure, so it's important to check the tire pressure frequently. Repair or replace punctured or damaged tires as soon as possible. If you feel sudden shaking or bumps while driving, or suspect that the tires are damaged, slow down immediately while avoiding heavy braking or sudden steering. Stop after confirming that it is safe, and then contact the NIO Service Center for assistance immediately.
- If the tire valve dust cap is lost, please replace it as soon as possible.
- Keep the tires away from oil, grease or fuel.
- Always store wheels in a cool, dry and dark place. Separate tires that are not on wheels should be stored upright.
- Do not store summer tires or park a vehicle with summer tires in ambient temperatures below -15 °C.

Check the tread pattern for wear marks on a regular basis, especially before and after long drives. If the tire is worn down to 1.6mm or less, a wear mark will appear, by then the ground grip of the tire will be greatly reduced, and the tire will need to be replaced immediately to prevent the risk of an accident occurring.



For safety reasons, tires must be replaced if they show the following damage:

- Damage such as cuts, splits, and cracks down to the carcass, and bulges that indicate inner ply damage.
- Frequently leaks, or irreparable damage due to the size or location of the cut or other damaged locations.
- Punctures, bulges and damage to tire sidewalls.
- Deformation or corrosion of tires caused by long-term parking.

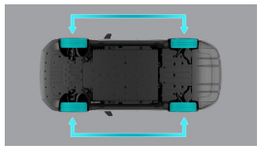
If you are not sure, please consult the NIO Service Center.

Caution

If tire wear is uneven, we recommend that you contact NIO to have the tires checked for dynamic balancing.

In order to reduce tire wear and prolong the service life of the tires, the tires should be cared for according to your driving habits and road conditions:

- New tires are in the run-in period during the first 500 kilometers. Running in at a moderate speed and with a careful driving style will prolong the service life of the tires.
- When passing a curb or similar sections of road, keep the wheels perpendicular to the curb as much as possible, and drive slowly.
- Hard impacts of the tires against curbs or objects with sharp edges, such as rocks, or impacts against sharp edges can cause imperceptible tire damage that will add up in the future. Depending on the severity of the impact, it may damage the rim flange.
- Turning too fast, over acceleration and hard braking will increase tire wear.
- New tires, after they are replaced, must undergo a dynamic balance check.
- If the vehicle cannot remain straight or keeps deviating while driving, please go to the NIO Service Center to check the wheel alignment parameters and make adjustments if necessary.
- If the rear tires have less wear than the front tires, then swap the front and rear tires as needed. It is recommended to swap the front and rear tires every 10,000 km.



Caution

When passing through large pits, speed bumps, obstacles or damaged roads, please pay attention to safety and slow down to reduce the likelihood that the low-profile tires bulge or burst.

Brake Pad and Disc Inspection and Maintenance

Please depress the brake pedal occasionally when driving on rainy days or on ice- and snow-covered roads so that the heat generated by friction can make the brake pads warm and dry. The same shall be done when you drive in extremely wet or cold weather.

After having your vehicle cleaned, dry the brake for a short time to avoid impacting the braking effect and prevent the brake disc from rusting.

Because the wear condition of brake pads and brake discs depends largely on your driving style and service conditions, it is impossible to determine the wear condition in terms of actual driving mileage.

This high performance braking system is used to achieve comprehensive and excellent braking effects at various vehicle speeds and temperatures. Therefore, in certain vehicle speed, braking force and environment conditions (such as temperature and humidity), the brake may make a sharp noise.

New and replaced brake pads and brake discs can provide the best braking effect after being run in for at least 500 km. During the running-in period, you need to depress the brake pedal harder to compensate for the reduced braking effect.

You can go to the Settings interface on the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving and Parking > Rust and Moisture Removal for Brake Disc** to turn this feature on:

- After your vehicle is parked for a long time, it can speed up the rust removal of the brake disc.
- After it rains or the vehicle is washed, the moisture on the surface of the brake disc can be removed faster to reduce the probability of braking noise.
- When a new vehicle is used, it can speed up the running-in of the brake friction disc.

After the rust and moisture removal feature of the brake disc is turned on, only the brake caliper is used when braking in order to speed up the friction between the brake disc and the brake pad so as to achieve a rust and moisture removal effect. At this time, the regenerative braking system will no longer work. This will have a certain impact on the range because the braking system cannot provide an additional braking force, and can only rely on the brake pedal to control the deceleration.

When you switch between drive modes, the rust and moisture removal feature of the brake disc is automatically turned off.

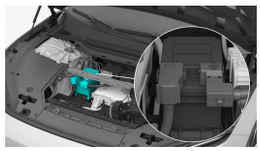
Air Filter Inspection and Maintenance

After replacing the air filter, go to the Comfort settings interface from the bottom of the center display, and tap **Air Filter Life Timer** to reset the filter element service life timer. This estimated service life is for reference only because the actual service life depends on the environment and other factors. Replace it when needed.

Make sure to keep the grille shutter of the air conditioner clear of any obstructions (such as leaves and snow) before driving.

12V Battery Care

The 12V battery supplies 12V power for vehicle starting equipment and electrical equipment, and is located in the front trunk. Keeping the 12V battery fully charged will prolong its service life.



Warning

If the 12V battery is leaking or swelling, please contact NIO immediately. If the electrolyte comes in contact with eyes or skin, please rinse the eyes or skin with running water and seek medical attention immediately.

Caution

- If the 12V battery is severely drained (e.g. having been left unused for a long time), please contact NIO for assistance and do not replace it yourself.
- Before leaving the vehicle, please ensure that all electric systems, such as lights and the media center, are turned off, and park the vehicle in a cool and dry place.

Caution

After the 12V battery is disconnected and reconnected, the automatic lifting and anti-pinch features of the window will be temporarily unavailable.

High-voltage Battery Maintenance and Recycling

High-voltage Battery Maintenance

The high-voltage battery is an important driving part of the vehicle. Please pay attention to the following precautions when using it:

- Parking the vehicle in an environment with excessively high or low temperature will directly affect the service life of the high-voltage battery. Do not park the vehicle in such an environment for an extended period of time (more than 8 hours).
- Do not park the vehicle in a place with high temperature or a heat source to avoid accidental fire.
- The vehicle should be parked in a dry place. Try to avoid parking in damp or watery parking spaces.
- It is recommended not to stay in deep water for a long time (preferably not exceeding the battery base plate) when the vehicle is wading, as it may cause damage to the high-voltage components of the vehicle.
- Avoid frequent use of high-power DC fast charging to charge the vehicle, as it will affect the service life of the high-voltage battery.
- If the vehicle will not be used for a long time, ensure that the battery level of high-voltage battery is above 50% (displayed on the digital instrument cluster) and park the vehicle in a cool and dry place to avoid affecting the service life of the high-voltage battery. It is recommended to check the battery level every week and use the vehicle once a month.
- Please follow the instructions and use a charging device that complies with the charging specifications to properly charge the vehicle.
- When driving on a road with bumps, gravel, or protruding obstacles, please drive slowly or try to avoid the obstacles to prevent harm to the vehicle chassis or high-voltage battery pack. If the vehicle body bottom is bumped or a bumping sound is heard, please contact a NIO Service Center immediately for safety inspection of chassis and high-voltage battery pack.

Warning

- The high voltage battery operates at a high voltage. Do not touch, move, or disassemble the high voltage battery or its circuit without authorization. Doing so may result in injury.
- Please be sure to charge the vehicle within 24 hours when the remaining driving range is at zero. During this time, the charging speed will be limited until the battery level reaches 50%. Failure to charge the vehicle within 72 hours may cause irreversible damage to the high voltage battery.

Recycling of High-voltage Battery

Waste high-voltage batteries need to be properly recycled. In the process of vehicle maintenance, the high-voltage batteries that meet the following conditions are deemed to require recycling:

1. During the maintenance of high-voltage battery in a NIO Service Center, battery capacity and state are inspected. For batteries that shall be recycled according to the provisions of relevant laws and regulations, NIO shall assume the entity responsibility and recycle them according to the market conditions at that time.
2. In other circumstances, if it is determined that a battery can no longer be utilized but it is in good condition, it will be recycled and put to degraded use after minimal repair.
3. If a battery has a major flaw or damage, and cannot be put into degraded use, it will enter the recycling process.

   Caution

   Do not casually dispose of the high voltage battery, as it can cause severe environmental damage.

Vehicles, vehicle parts and batteries must be disposed of using authorized recycling companies. They must not be disposed of in general household waste or sent to landfill as this can cause severe environmental damage. Please see the NIO website for details.

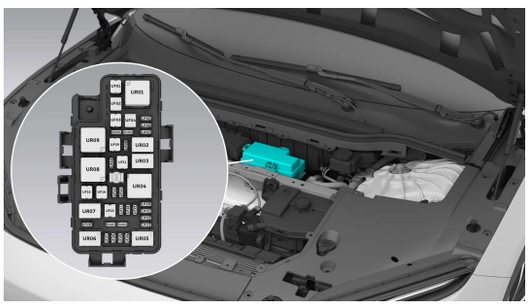
This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

The recycling process of high-voltage battery is as follows: NIO or a third-party recycling agency designated by NIO will perform recycling and subsequent treatment.

Fuse Box under the Hood

Caution

Do not use fuses with a nominal current higher than the rated current. Only replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same nominal current and size.

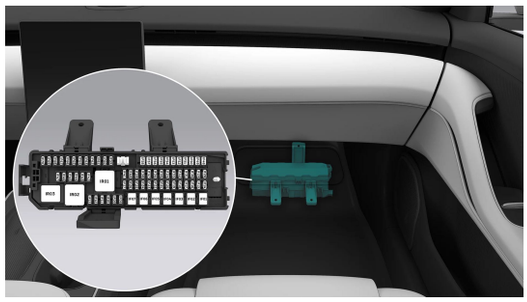


S/N	Specifications	Description
UR01	MINI	Cooling fan relay
UR02	—	—
UR03	280 MICRO	High-voltage battery electronic water pump relay
UR04	ISO MINI	Main relay
UR05	—	—
UR06	—	—
UR07	280 MICRO	Front motor electronic water pump relay
UR08	—	—
UR09	MINI	Front fan relay
UF01	60A	UR01 relay switch-end power supply
UF02	—	—
UF03	25A	Body controller (front wiper motor power supply)
UF04	—	—
UF05	10A	High-voltage DC converter integrated component
UF06	10A	Front inverter
UF07	—	—
UF08	—	—
UF09	50A	UR09 relay switch-end power supply
UF10	—	—
UF11	20A	UR03 relay switch-end power supply
UF12	10A	Electronic shift module (KL87 power supply)
UF13	10A	Electric heater/air quality sensor/PM2.5 sensor/compressor assembly/heat exchanger electronic expansion valve/heat pump electronic expansion valve (KL87 power supply)
UF14	20A	UR07 relay switch-end power supply
UF15	—	—
UF16	—	—
UF17	10A	Rear HV power distribution unit (KL87 power supply)
UF18	15A	Vehicle controller (KL87 power supply)
UF19	—	—
UF20	10A	UR01/UR03 relay coil-end power supply
UF21	10A	Five-way cooling water valve (KL87 power supply)
UF22	10A	Brake switch (KL87 power supply)
UF23	10A	Front bumper movable grille (KL87 power supply)
UF24	—	—
UF25	—	—
UF26	—	—
UF27	—	—
UF28	10A	UR07 relay coil-end power supply

Instrument Panel Fuse Box

Caution

Do not use fuses with a nominal current higher than the rated current. Only replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same nominal current and size.



S/N	Specifications	Description
IR01	ISO MINI	Power socket relay
IR02	ISO MINI	Seat/flexible chassis control relay
IR03	ISO MINI	KL15 relay
IF01	50A	IR01 relay switch-end power supply
IF02	—	—
IF03	20A	Brake pressure regulator power supply
IF04	40A	Brake pressure regulator motor power supply 1
IF05	40A	Brake pressure regulator motor power supply 2
IF06	40A	IR03 relay switch-end power supply
IF07	50A	IR02 relay switch-end power supply
IF08	10A	Driver's seat lumbar support/fan power supply
IF09	10A	Passenger seat lumbar support/fan power supply
IF10	10A	Flexible chassis controller power supply 1
IF11	—	—
IF12	10A	Flexible chassis controller power supply 2
IF13	20A	Trailer control module power supply
IF14	10A	Body gateway controller power supply
IF15	10A	Wireless charging module and body controller (safe box) power supply
IF16	10A	Center display power supply
IF17	30A	Central computing cluster ADAS feature slave power supply 1
IF18	10A	Smart antennas power supply
IF19	10A	Digital key Bluetooth antenna module power supply
IF20	10A	Steering column module power supply
IF21	10A	Air conditioning control unit power supply
IF22	10A	Outer door handle, driver’s door switch power supply
IF23	25A	Body controller power supply (rear seats and backlighting)
IF24	10A	ETC/alcohol interlock power supply
IF25	10A	LiDAR power supply
IF26	15A	Body controller power supply (washer fluid pump)
IF27	10A	NOMI power supply
IF28	10A	Digital instrument cluster display power supply
IF29	10A	Diagnostic port power supply
IF30	10A	Fragrance module and rain light sensor power supply
IF31	20A	Body controller power supply 1
IF32	20A	Body controller power supply 2
IF33	30A	Central computing cluster ADAS feature slave power supply 2
IF34	10A	Rear child monitoring/radar sensor/parking radar controller power supply
IF35	10A	IR01/IR03 relay coil-end power supply
IF36	10A	Battery management system power supply
IF37	15A	Pyrotechnic cutout switch power supply
IF38	10A	Electronic shift module power supply
IF39	10A	Brake light switch power supply
IF40	10A	Vehicle controller power supply 1
IF41	10A	Central computing cluster infotainment power supply 1
IF42	25A	Front 12V power socket power supply
IF43	15A	Front two-in-one USB3.0DP-OUT port power supply
IF44	10A	Front USB3.0 port power supply
IF45	20A	Rear armrest box USB port power supply (with XR BOX)
IF45	10A	Rear control panel USB port power supply (without XR BOX)
IF46	10A	Body gateway controller (power socket relay feedback)

IF47	25A	Rear 12V power socket power supply
IF48	15A	Body controller power supply (horn)
IF49	30A	Driver’s seat control module power supply
IF50	30A	Passenger seat control module power supply
IF51	30A	Front left door control module power supply 1
IF52	20A	Front left door control module power supply 2
IF53	30A	Front right door control module power supply 1
IF54	20A	Front right door control module power supply 2
IF55	30A	Rear left door control module power supply 1
IF56	20A	Rear left door control module power supply 2
IF57	30A	Rear right door control module power supply 1
IF58	20A	Rear right door control module power supply 2
IF59	10A	Electric power steering power supply 1
IF60	10A	Electric power steering power supply 2
IF61	10A	Airbag controller power supply
IF62	10A	IR02 relay coil-end/Body gateway controller/body controller feedback
IF63	10A	Air conditioning control unit/ETC/rearview mirror power supply
IF64	20A	Left headlight power supply
IF65	20A	Right headlight power supply
IF66	10A	Liftgate middle taillight power supply
IF67	10A	Liftgate left/right taillight power supply
IF68	10A	Vehicle controller power supply
IF69	10A	Interior lighting
IF70	10A	Four-door speaker ambient lighting power supply

Rear Trunk Fuse Box

Caution

Do not use fuses with a nominal current higher than the rated current. Only replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same nominal current and size.

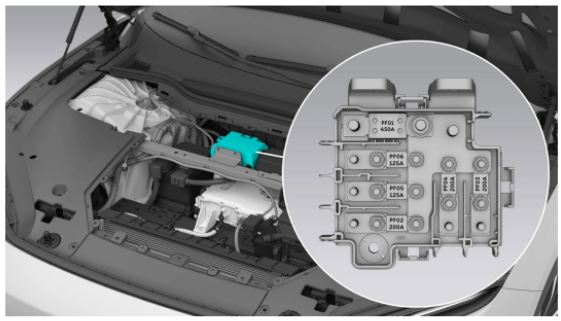
S/N	Specifications	Description
TR01	—	—
TR02	ISO MINI	Rear windshield defog relay
TR03	ISO MINI	KL15 power supply relay (redundant)
TR04	ISO MICRO	Front wiper glass heating relay
TR05	—	—
TR06	ISO MICRO	Rear wiper relay
TF01	—	—
TF02	40A	TR02 relay switch-end power supply
TF03	40A	TR03 relay switch-end power supply
TF04	20A	Trailer control module power supply 1
TF05	30A	Liftgate control module power supply
TF06	30A	Power amplifier control unit power supply 1
TF07	—	—
TF08	10A	Rear inverter power supply
TF09	10A	Vehicle controller power supply 2
TF10	10A	Battery management unit power supply 1

TF11	20A	Central computing cluster infotainment feature power supply 2
TF12	10A	Body gateway controller power supply 2
TF13	30A	Central computing cluster ADAS feature master power supply 2
TF14	30A	Central computing cluster ADAS feature master power supply 1
TF15	30A	Body controller power supply (exterior lighting 2)
TF16	10A	Liftgate kick sensor/electrochromic sunshade controller/augmented reality extender/charging indicator power supply
TF17	15A	TR04 relay switch-end power supply
TF18	30A	Body controller power supply (exterior lighting 1)
TF19	15A	TR06 relay power supply
TF20	20A	Trailer control module power supply 2
TF21	10A	TR02 relay coil-end power supply
TF22	10A	Onboard charging module power supply (charging communication)
TF23	10A	Onboard charging module power supply
TF24	—	—
TF25	—	—
TF26	—	—
TF27	30A	Flexible chassis controller power supply 2
TF28	30A	Flexible chassis controller power supply 1
TF29	30A	Power amplifier control unit power supply 2
TF30	10A	Charge port ground reverse protection A-
TF31	10A	Charging confirmation signal A+
TF32	—	—
TF33	—	—
TF34	—	—
TF35	—	—

Pre-fuse Box

Caution

Do not use fuses with a nominal current higher than the rated current. Only replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same nominal current and size.



S/N	Specifications	Description
PF01	400A	DC/DC converter
PF02	200A	Front trunk fuse box
PF03	200A	Instrument panel fuse box
PF04	200A	Rear trunk fuse box
PF05	125A	Electric power steering gear power supply 2
PF06	125A	Electric power steering gear power supply 1

Exterior Cleaning and Maintenance

Regular cleaning and waxing of your vehicle can protect it from damage caused by the external environment. The interval to wash and wax your vehicle depends on the frequency of use, parking conditions of your vehicle (in garage, under trees, or in direct sunlight, etc.), and weather conditions.

The deposition of bird droppings, insect residues, resins, industrial dust, tar lumps, coal cinders, and other deposits on the body paintwork and roof will cause damage to your vehicle paint. If your vehicle is exposed to high temperature and strong light, the corrosion of the paintwork of your vehicle will be exacerbated. Therefore, it may be necessary to wash your vehicle once a week. When washing, please soak the dirt with enough water first and then remove it.

Warning

Do not wash the vehicle when it is in charging.

Caution

Please use specialized cleaners or conditioners when washing or waxing the vehicle. Pay attention to the expiry date before use and keep out of reach of children.

Manual wash

When manually washing your vehicle, first use enough water to moisten the exterior surface of your vehicle and rinse off as much dirt as possible. Then, clean your vehicle carefully from the top down using a soft sponge, cloth, or soft brush. If there is dirt that is difficult to remove, a cleaning agent can be used. If there is a lot of dirt on the sponge or cloth, replacing it with a new cleaning sponge is recommended. After cleaning your vehicle, rinse it thoroughly with water and wipe it clean with a towel. After the winter salt spraying period ends, the bottom of your vehicle needs to be thoroughly washed.

To protect the environment, please wash your vehicle on a dedicated washing platform. If this equipment is not available, you need to choose a suitable place to wash your vehicle.

To facilitate your vehicle washing operation, you can go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving and Parking > Wash Mode**, where you can choose the opening and closing of the doors, windows, rear trunk, and charge port, and unlock the settings, wipers, and door handles to reduce damage to your vehicle components while the vehicle is washed.

Note

- Do not wash the vehicle under direct sunlight as this may cause damage to the paint.
- When washing the vehicle with a water hose in cold weather, do not spray water directly on the door handles, charge ports, doors and sunroof. Otherwise, these moving parts may freeze in place.
- Do not use rough sponges or corrosive cleaners which may damage the paint.
- Do not use water hotter than 60°C.
- Do not use a dry cloth or sponge to clean the headlights. Clean them with water or car shampoo instead.

Automatic wash

Your vehicle can be washed in automatic vehicle washing equipment. However, the structure and filter of the vehicle washing equipment and the type of cleaning agent and maintenance agent can have an impact on the body paintwork. If the paintwork of your vehicle is dull or even scratched after washing, please notify the operator of the vehicle washing equipment immediately. If necessary, the vehicle washing equipment shall be replaced.

Before the automatic vehicle wash of your vehicle is performed, all the doors and windows shall be closed, the automatic wipers shall be turned off, and the side mirrors shall be folded. At the same time, the operator of the vehicle washing equipment shall be informed in advance that your vehicle is equipped with a roof rack, a radio antenna, etc.

You can go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving and Parking > Wash Mode**, where you can choose the opening and closing of the doors, windows, rear trunk, and charge port, and unlock the settings, wipers, and door handles to reduce damage to your vehicle components while the vehicle is washed.

Caution

Before your vehicle undergoes an automatic vehicle wash, please switch to Neutral gear (N gear). Go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving and Parking > Neutral Mode**.

High pressure wash

When using a high pressure washing machine to wash your vehicle, always follow the operating instructions, and, in particular, maintain a sufficient distance between the spraying nozzle and the paintwork or soft materials (such as rubber hoses or sound insulation materials). It is recommended that the distance is more than 500 mm, the pressure is below 100 bar, and the maximum temperature is 60 °C. When rinsing, try to make the jet perpendicular to the surface of your vehicle as much as possible. If these requirements are not satisfied, your vehicle components may be damaged or water droplets may flow into your vehicle.

Never use a circular or rotating nozzle, especially when washing tires. Even if the spraying distance is large and the rinsing time is short, the tires may be damaged.

Never use a high pressure washing machine to rinse your vehicle nameplate and the gaps at the edges and corners of the door glass.

Polishing and waxing

A high quality wax layer can effectively protect your vehicle's paintwork from environmental influences and even prevent minor scratches. When water droplets no longer roll off smoothly on the cleaned body paintwork, a layer of high quality hard wax curing agent shall be applied immediately. If cleaning and curing agents are applied regularly, applying hard wax at least twice a year is recommended to protect the body paintwork.

Polishing is only necessary when the body paintwork has lost its gloss and the waxing cannot restore its glossy appearance. Do not polish components coated with matte paint or plastic parts.

Wiper blades

Wash in warm soapy water. Do not use cleaning agents derived from alcohol or petroleum products.

Windows and side mirrors

Clean the inner and outer surfaces of all the windows regularly with glass cleaning agents.

Clean the inner surface of the rear windshield with a soft cloth and wipe it horizontally. Do not scratch the glass or use abrasive cleaning agents to avoid damaging the heating element.

Wash the side mirrors with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaners to avoid damaging the lens.

Plastic parts

Plastic parts shall be cleaned through conventional cleaning methods. If the stains cannot be removed, only solvent-free special cleaning agents for plastic parts can be used. Otherwise, the plastic parts may be corroded.

Chromium-plated parts

Chromium-plated parts can be cleaned with a damp cloth and then polished with a soft dry cloth. If the effect is not good enough, chromium care agents can be used. When using chromium care agents, make sure to cover the entire surface evenly and completely. Do not clean and polish chrome-plated surfaces in dusty and sandy environments.

Wheels

To maintain the beautiful appearance of the aluminum alloy wheel rims for a long time, you need to perform regular maintenance on the wheels. It is recommended to clean them every two weeks to prevent fine abrasive particles, dirt, or salt particles that fall after the vehicle brakes from adhering to them. Otherwise, the aluminum alloy may be corroded. After cleaning the wheels, apply an acid- and alkali-free cleaning agent designed specifically for aluminum alloy wheels. Apply hard wax to the wheels every three months. If the protective paint layer is damaged due to being struck by a stone or other reasons, it must be repaired immediately and no body paintwork polish or other polishing materials shall be used.

Severe dirt layers on the wheels can also lead to a wheel imbalance. This will be reflected through wheel vibrations, which will be transmitted to the steering wheel. In some cases, this may cause premature wear of the steering gear. Therefore, wheels covered in dirt shall be cleaned regularly.

Bottom plate protection

The bottom of your vehicle has been treated to prevent chemical and mechanical damage. However, damage to the protective layer is inevitable during driving. It is recommended to inspect the protective layer on the bottom and chassis of your vehicle at regular intervals, preferably before winter and in spring. If necessary, repair your vehicle.

External area of radar

The external area of the radar can be cleaned manually with a flannelet soaked with a proper amount of water or neutral cleaning solution.

In case of snow or ice, it is necessary to first clean the external area of the radar from ice and snow, and then wipe it with a flannelet or air dry it.

When using a high pressure washing machine to wash your vehicle, do not rinse the external area of the radar directly to prevent damage.

Please be careful not to pollute or damage the sensors on the front/rear bumper when maintaining your vehicle.

Do not apply film, wax, or coat in the external area of the LiDAR. Otherwise, the sensing performance of the LiDAR will be affected.

Interior Cleaning and Maintenance

Regularly clean the interior with cleaners or conditioners to maintain the interior appearance. Before using any cleaners, vacuum the interior first.

Note

- Some dyes (such as from dark-washed jeans or sheepskin clothing) may stain the interior materials. When this happens, clean the stained surface as soon as possible.
- Do not use strong solvents such as cleaning fluids, petrol or petroleum solvents which may damage the interior materials.
- Do not spray cleaners directly on electronic buttons, switches or parts. Wipe stains with a soft cloth dampened with cleaning fluid.
- Sharp objects may damage the fabric interior.

Fabric Interior

Only use specialized cleaners, dry foam, and a soft brush to clean the fabric materials on the doors, rear trunk, roof, and other areas.

Leather Interior

You can use a slightly wet cotton or woolen cloth, or a cleaning cloth to clean common dirt on the leather interior. You can use a cloth dipped in mild car shampoo to clean stubborn oil stains. Make sure that the leather material is not fully wet and prevent water from seeping through the stitching. Any remaining water on the leather surface should be quickly wiped off with a soft dry cloth. Stains from ballpoint pens, ink, lipsticks, shoe polish, and other substances on leather surfaces should be removed as soon as possible. We recommend you use a 100% pure polyurethane foam sponge for cleaning Nappa leather.

We recommend limiting the use of leather care products as much as possible, no more than twice a year for light-colored leather and no more than once a year for dark-colored leather.

Note

- Do not use cleaning solvents to clean the instrument panel, air bag covers, or leather interior.
- To avoid leather fading, do not leave the vehicle under strong sunlight for long periods of time. If you need to park the vehicle under strong sunlight, please cover all leather material.
- Sharp objects on clothes such as zips, rivets, and sharp buckles may leave marks or dents on the leather.
- Avoid drinking coffee or using sunscreen in vehicles with a Nappa leather interior. Remove coffee or sunscreen stains on Nappa leather with mild soapy water as soon as possible.
- Do not spray formaldehyde cleaners on leather. Doing so may leave white spots on genuine leather which are difficult to remove.

Seat Belts

Only use mild car shampoo to clean the seat belts. Do not remove the seat belts from the vehicle. Allow the belts to dry fully while extended.

Protective Films

Color-Changing Film/Transparent Film

When installing a color-changing or transparent film, make sure to avoid areas around the surround view cameras, HD cameras, ultrasonic radars, and LiDAR radars to prevent interference with the advanced driver assistance system features.

Side Window Film

Do not install the side window film too close to the edge of the window. Leave a small gap to prevent the curling caused by the lifting and lowering of the window.

Front Windshield Film

The NIO original front windshield has good thermal insulation and ultraviolet blocking performance. Using non-original film is not recommended.

If you still want to install a film, you should prevent installation liquid from seeping into the area below the instrument panel. This will cause failure of electrical components inside the instrument panel.

Rear Windshield Film

The NIO original rear windshield has good thermal insulation and ultraviolet blocking performance. Using non-original film is not recommended.

If you still want to install a film on the rear windshield, be sure to:

- Thoroughly remove water when applying the film to avoid causing excessive glare on the windshield at night.
- Prevent excessive installation liquid from seeping into the rear cover, which will cause short circuit in the audio system.

Caution

- Avoid the signal emission and reception areas when installing the film in order not to affect the normal operation of some systems.
- After the installation of the sunroof insulation protection film, avoid exposure to sunlight within 3 hours, do not wash your vehicle within 24 hours, and do not exceed 80 km/h while driving.
- Do not raise or lower the window or wipe the inside of the glass with force within 7-10 days after the installation of the side shield film.

- Do not activate the rear windshield defogging feature within 30 days after the installation of the rear windshield film.
- The rear windshield film may have an impact on the auto-dimming feature of the rearview mirror.
- Avoid scratching the film area with hard objects during daily use and when washing the vehicle.

Application of Antibacterial Product

Haptex

Haptex synthetic leather with antibacterial properties by means of a functional layer is based on Biomaster AT300 (active ingredient silver chloride CAS-No. 7783-90-6) for use in automotive interior parts (eg. seats, IP, CNSL, pillars) cladding: Antimicrobial product protection against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria (eg. Staphylococcus aureus and Escherichia coli according to GB/T 31402 or ISO 22196). No addition precautions need to be taken when the driver and passengers use the vehicle normally.

Fabric

Fabric with antibacterial properties is based on SILVADUR™ 960 Flex Antimicrobial, a polymeric system incorporating a silver ion antimicrobial agent (active ingredient CAS-No. 7761-88-8) for use in automotive interior parts: Antimicrobial product protection against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria (eg. Staphylococcus aureus and Escherichia coli according to GB/T 20944). No additional precautions need to be taken when the driver and passengers use the vehicle normally.

Steering Wheel Leather

Artificial leather with antibacterial properties by means of a functional layer is based on Biomaster AT300 (active ingredient silver chloride CAS-No. 7783-90-6) for use in the steering wheel surface cover: Antimicrobial product protection against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria (eg. Staphylococcus aureus and Escherichia coli according to GB/T 31402 or ISO 22196). No additional precautions need to be taken when the driver and passengers use the vehicle normally.

Paint

1. Novaron AG1100 coatings with antibacterial properties are based on silver sodium hydrogen zirconium phosphate (active ingredient CAS-No. 265647-11-8) for use in the automotive interior paint parts (eg. driver airbag cover): Antimicrobial product protection against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria (eg. Staphylococcus aureus and Escherichia coli according to GB/T 21866). No additional precautions need to be taken when the driver and passenger use the vehicle normally.
2. PETER coatings with antibacterial properties are based on silver phosphate glass (active ingredient CAS-No. 308069-39-8) for use in automotive interior paint parts (eg. ICS holder paint): Antimicrobial product protection against gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria (eg. Staphylococcus aureus and Escherichia coli according to ISO 22196). No additional precautions need to be taken when the driver and passenger use the vehicle normally.

Filter

Filter with antibacterial properties by means of a functional layer is based on dimethyltetradecyl[3-(trimethoxysilyl)propyl]ammonium chloride (N-46279) (active ingredient CAS-No. 41591-87-1) for use in air handling/ air conditioning systems: Bacteriostatic and fungistatic properties against a multitude of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, yeast and fungi according to ISO 846 and JIS L 1902. No additional precautions need to be taken when placing the filter on the market.

Evaporator core & Inner condenser coating

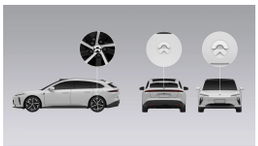
Hydrophilic composite coating with antimicrobial properties by means of a functional layer based on active substances CAS-No.7631-86-9, 26530-20-1 and 4299-07-4 was attached to the surface of the evaporator and inner condenser. The coating shows great antimildew properties for Aspergillus Niger, Penicillium sp. and antibacterial properties for Escherichia coli and Staphylococcus aureus according to GB 21551.2. No additional precautions need to be taken when placing the evaporator and inner condenser on the market.

Vehicle Information

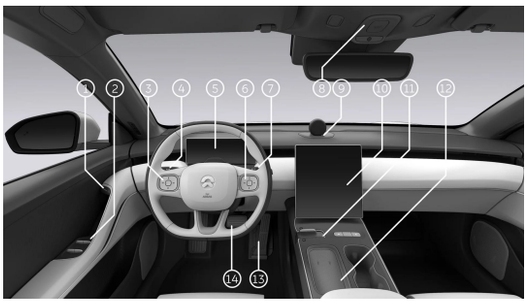
OEM	Anhui Jianghuai Automobile Group Co., Ltd.
NIO Hotline	Refer to the contact table
NIO website	Refer to the contact table

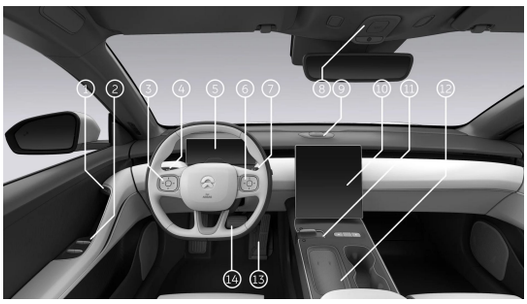
The vehicle nameplate is located under the B-pillar on the right side.

The vehicle brand logo can be found in the following places:



Instrumentation and Controls





1. Electronic switch for inner door handle	8. Emergency call and reading lights
2. Window control panel	9. NOMI Smart Assistant
3. Switches on the left side of the steering wheel	10. Touchscreen display
4. Turn signal and headlights stalk	11. Gears and central control panel
5. Digital instrument cluster display	12. Central control wireless charging board
6. Switches on the right side of the steering wheel	13. Accelerator pedal
7. Wiper and washer stalk	14. Brake pedal

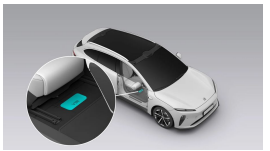
Warning Sign Information

No.	Name	Warning Sign	Description
1	High voltage electricity warning sign		Danger! Do not touch high voltage components.
2	High voltage component warning sign 1		High voltage components. Danger! Do not touch high voltage components without wearing protective equipment to avoid electric shock.
3	High voltage component warning sign 2		High voltage components. Danger! Do not touch high voltage components without wearing protective equipment to avoid electric shock and burns.
4	High voltage battery pack warning sign		Cautions for using the high voltage battery pack

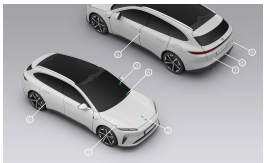
5	High voltage cable warning sign		High voltage components are connected with orange high voltage harnesses. Do not touch high voltage components without wearing protective equipment.
6	Mutual compatibility identifiers used for charging the car		Mutual compatibility identifiers to guide you charging the car are found in the car's charging port. When selecting the charging gun, you must make sure the identifier on the charging gun equals one of the identifiers found in the car's charging port, either C, K or L.Voltage ranges related to those identifiers are as follows: • C: AC ≤ 480V • K: DC 50V to 500V • L: DC 200V to 920V

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is embossed on the floorboard under the front passenger seat.



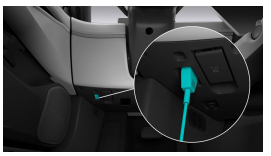
The vehicle identification number (VIN) can be found in the following places:



1. Inner side of the hood
2. On top of the front drive motor
3. On the left side of the instrument panel crossbeam
4. Bottom left corner of the front windshield
5. Under the B-pillar on the left side of the body
6. Under the right rear door frame
7. Above the end of the rear drive motor
8. Above the rear floorboard
9. On the right side of the liftgate

You can also read the vehicle identification number (VIN) with a diagnostic tool (NIO Diagnostic System Generation II (BD2)) that is compatible with the vehicle:

1. Connect the diagnostic tool to the vehicle diagnostic port, and turn on the diagnostic tool.

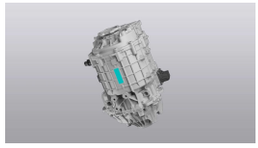


2. Start the diagnostic tool and log in to the main interface of the diagnostic tool.
3. The diagnostic tool will automatically read the vehicle identification number and display it on the current interface of the diagnostic tool.

Drive motor identification mark

The front drive motor identification mark is located under the motor.

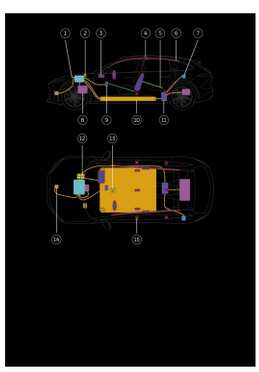
The rear drive motor identification mark is located on the lower left side of the motor.



Recommended Fluids and Capacities

Item	Specifications	Quantity
Brake fluid	DOT4	0.9L
Coolant	-40 °C OAT (glycol aqueous solution with inhibitor)	12.9L (100kWh - Jiangsu Contemporary Amperex Technology Limited) 12.81L (100kWh - CALB Co., Ltd.) 13.15L (75kWh)
Refrigerant	R1234yf	1,000g
Windshield washer fluid	Freezing point < -30 °C	4L
Gear box oil	Castrol BOT350M3	0.8L (front) 1L (rear)

E-Powertrain System Information



1. High-voltage DC converter integrated component
2. Emergency HV cut-off plug
3. Airbag
4. Curtain airbag gas cylinder
5. Structural reinforcement
6. Curtain airbag
7. Charge port
8. Drive Motor
9. Air conditioning HV electric heater
10. High-voltage battery

11. Rear HV power distribution unit
12. 12V battery
13. Airbag control unit
14. Air conditioning compressor
15. Seat belt pre-tensioner

High-voltage battery

The vehicle is equipped with a lithium-ion high-voltage battery. Be sure not to damage the high-voltage battery when lifting the vehicle. Take extra care not to break the battery's bottom plate when using rescue tools.

Warning

- Before repairing, disassembling, and installing high-voltage components, it is necessary to disconnect the power supply and confirm that the emergency power cut-off switch and 12V power supplies are disconnected. After disconnecting the power, let your vehicle stand still for more than 5 minutes.
- Personnel without corresponding qualifications are prohibited from operating high-voltage components. Operators must wear insulated protective equipment such as insulated gloves that meet the requirements. They are not allowed to carry or wear any metal items.

Drive Motor

The electric drive system is responsible for the power output of the vehicle, which can convert the DC energy of the high-voltage battery pack into mechanical torque in a controllable way, and transmit it to the wheels to drive the vehicle. In addition, in the braking state, the electric drive system can also regenerate braking energy to charge the high-voltage battery pack. The vehicle is equipped with two electric drive systems, of which the front electric drive system is installed on the front sub-frame, and the rear electric drive system is installed on the rear sub-frame.

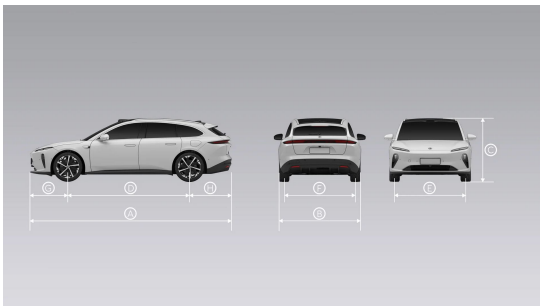
12V battery

The 12V battery powers the SRS, windows, locks, touchscreens, vehicle lighting, etc.

Airbag

The vehicle airbag system includes frontal airbags and side airbags. The frontal airbags include front row head airbags, of which the driver airbag is located inside the trim cover of the steering wheel, and the front passenger airbag is located inside the instrument panel; the side airbags include front side airbags (located on the outer side of the front seats, and the inner side of the driver seat), and curtain airbags (located above the doors on both sides, in the ceiling area from the A-pillar to the C-pillar, where there are curtain airbag gas cylinders inside). The word “AIRBAG” is marked on the places where the airbag is placed to remind you that there is an airbag herein.

Vehicle Dimension



Item	Numerical value
Length A (mm)	4790
Width B (mm) (without side mirrors)	1960
Height C (mm)	1499
Wheelbase D (mm)	2888
Front track E (mm)	1685
Rear track F (mm)	1685
Front suspension G (mm)	897
Rear suspension H (mm)	1005
Ground clearance (mm)	135
Approach angle	13°
Departure angle	14°
Number of seats	5

Mass Parameters

Item		75 kWh	100 kWh
Unladen mass (kg)		2190	2210
Mass of vehicle with bodywork in running order (including coolant, oil, fuel, tools, spare wheel and driver) (kg)		2265	2285
Distribution of this mass among the axles (kg)	Front Axle:	1129	1139
	Rear Axle:	1136	1136 1146
Technically permissible maximum laden mass stated by the manufacturer (kg)		2730	2730
Distribution of this mass among the axles and, in the case of a semi-trailer or center-axle trailer, load on the coupling point (kg)	Front Axle:	1229	1229
	Rear Axle:	1501	1501
Technically permissible maximum mass on each axle (kg)	Front Axle:	1283	1283
	Rear Axle:	1530	1530

Caution

When a trailer is installed, it's still necessary to ensure that:

- Technically permissible maximum laden mass no more than **2730**kg;
- Technically permissible maximum mass on Front Axle no more than **1283**kg, and on Rear Axle no more than **1530**kg.

Wheel and Tire Specifications

Item	Numerical value
Specifications	245/45R19 102V XL
	245/40R20 99W XL
Tire pressure (bar)	2.6 (no load)
Camber angle	-0.37±0.5°
Total front camber angle	0±0.5°
Front toe-in angle (per wheel)	0.21±0.1°
Total front toe-in angle	0±0.05°
Front kingpin caster angle	4.17±0.5°

Total front kingpin caster angle	0±0.5°
Rear camber angle	-0.96±0.35°
Total rear camber angle	0±0.5°
Rear toe-in angle (per wheel)	0.08±0.05°
Thrust angle	0±0.15°
Steering wheel angle	0±1.5°
Wheel bolt torque (N·m)	140

Note: The tire specifications are subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Caution

To ensure driving safety, it is recommended to replace the wheel nuts or bolts after removing and installing them 20 times.

Tire Markings

All tire signs and features are marked on the sidewall of the tire.

1. Product Name
2. Rated load mark
3. Tire Size

   A tire marked 245/40R20 means that the tire width is 245 mm, the aspect ratio is 40, and R means that the tire has a radial structure and the wheel diameter is 20 inches.

4. Tire load index and rated speed

   The tire load represents the corresponding load weight of the tire, and the rated speed is the maximum speed that the tire can be used for a long time.

Tire Load	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110
Load Weight	750 kg	775 kg	800 kg	825 kg	850 kg	875 kg	900 kg	925 kg	950 kg	975 kg	1000 kg	1030 kg	1060 kg

	Q	R	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Rated Speed	160 km/h	170 km/h	180 km/h	190 km/h	200 km/h	210 km/h	240 km/h	270 km/h	300 km/h

5. Maximum tire load and maximum inflation pressure allowed (not for normal driving)
6. DOT tire identification number

   Starts with the letters DOT, followed by numbers/letters, where the first 2 digits represent the code of the tire manufacturing plant, the second 2 digits represent the tire size, the next 4 digits represent the tire type code, and the last 4 digits represent the year and week of manufacturing. For example, 1721 means the 17th week of 2021. In the event of a recall of defective tires, this information may be used to contact consumers.

Motor Parameters

Item	Numerical value	
	Front	Rear
Drive motor type	Three-phase asynchronous motor	Three-phase permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive motor model	YS150S001	TZ210S002
Drive motor rated power/torque (kW/N·m)	30/60	70/150
Drive motor peak power/torque (kW/N·m)	150/280	210/420

Brake and Suspension Specs

Item	Numerical value	
Thickness of brake pad (mm)	Front	Rear
	2.5~8.7	2~8
Brake disc (mm)	Front	Rear
	32~30	20 ~ 18

High Voltage Battery Parameters

Item		100 kWh (Jiangsu Contemporary Amperex Technology Limited)	100 kWh (CALB Co., Ltd.)	75 kWh	70 kWh
High voltage battery cell	Type	Ternary lithium ion battery	Ternary lithium ion battery	Ternary lithium ion/lithium iron phosphate battery	Ternary lithium ion battery
	Rated voltage (V)	3.73	3.74	3.73/3.22	3.65
	Rated capacity (Ah)	276	137	237/192	100
High voltage battery pack system	Rated voltage (V)	358	358	386	350
	Rated capacity (Ah)	280	280	195	200
	L x W x H (mm)	2062x1539x185.6	2062x1539x183.1	2062x1539x185.6	2062x1539x185.6
	Number of cells in battery pack	96	192	118	192
	Weight of battery pack (kg)	555	555	535	525

Tire Inflation

Warning

Using underinflated or overinflated tires will increase the risk of accident and injury.

To ensure driving safety, please check the tire pressure on a regular basis. When checking the tire pressure, make sure it is the cold tire pressure (the tire temperature should be the same as the ambient temperature, or the tire should be cooled off for 3 hours after driving). The recommended cold tire pressure is marked on the door frame of the driver side. If hot tire is measured, the tire pressure is generally about 0.3 bar higher than that of cold tires.

Over-inflated tires may compromise the comfort of the vehicle, and are easily damaged on uneven road surfaces. In severe cases, there is even a risk of a tire blowout occurring, threatening the safety of the vehicle. Under-inflated tires may cause uneven tire wear, affecting the maneuverability of the vehicle and draining the battery.

Caution

- If the tires used on the vehicle are self-repairing tires, the vehicle can still continue to run within a certain speed range (below 120 km/h) when the puncture width is less than 5 mm and the center display shows that the tire pressure is normal. However, self-repairing tires cannot be used as permanent tire repair measures. If any tire is found to have a nail in it or is seriously damaged, please contact the NIO Service Center in a timely manner for tire inspection or replacement.
- When repairing, please try to orient the tire so that the punctured spot is at the top of the tire.
- Tire sealant can only be used to repair the tread area.

To inflate the tires using the tire inflator in the emergency kit:

1. Park the vehicle on a safe road, put on your reflective vest and place a warning triangle.
2. Open the vehicle tool cover in the rear trunk, and take out the tire inflator.
3. Take out the inflation tube on the side of the tire inflator and connect it to the tire valve.
4. Take out the power plug of the tire inflator and connect it to the 12V power supply of the vehicle.
5. Make sure that the vehicle is powered on, turn on the power switch of the tire inflator, and start to inflate the tires. When the tire pressure reaches 2.6 bar, manually turn off the power of the tire inflator and disconnect it from the vehicle's power supply.

6. After inflation is complete, disconnect the inflation tube from the tire valve, and put everything away.

Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (dTPMS)

The vehicle is equipped with a direct tire pressure monitoring system (dTPMS). If the pressure or temperature of one or more tires is abnormal, the tire pressure warning indicator will light up on the digital instrument cluster display along with the location of the faulty tire, alerting you to stop as soon as possible and check the tires, and to inflate/deflate the tires to the correct air pressure.

In the event of abnormal tire pressure or rapid air leakage, the tire pressure warning indicator will light up along with a “Beep” tone, alerting you to check the tires; if the Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (dTPMS) fails or the tire temperature exceeds the safe value, the tire pressure warning indicator will flash for 75 seconds and then stay on, along with a “Beep” tone. In this case, please stop the vehicle as soon as possible and contact the NIO Service Center immediately.

You can tap **My ET5 Touring** on the main screen of the center display to check the current tire pressure detected by the direct tire pressure monitoring system. If it shows that the current tire pressure is “--”, it means that no valid tire pressure value has been obtained. In such a case, drive at a speed of above 25 km/h for 10 minutes and check again. If the tire pressure is too low, the tire is overheated or the direct tire pressure monitoring system has failed, the corresponding tire will be highlighted along with the specific fault information.

The Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (dTPMS) is based on tire temperature and atmospheric temperature. At high altitudes or in cold regions, you may need to inflate the tires to a slightly higher pressure to clear the low tire pressure warning message.

If radio transmitting devices (e.g., wireless headsets, walkie-talkies) are used in or near the vehicle, the operation of the Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (dTPMS) may be subject to interference.

Anti-skid Chain

The vehicle is not equipped with anti-skid chains, which can be purchased separately if necessary. Precautions for using anti-skid chains:

- Unsuitable anti-skid chains will damage the tires, wheels and braking system of the vehicle. Please carefully check the specifications of the original tires and the relevant instructions of the anti-skid chain manufacturer. For original tires, only rear tires are equipped with half-pack anti-skid chains, and the rest of the tires are not suitable for anti-skid chains.
- When installing the anti-skid chains, do not drive faster than 50 km/h or the limit speed specified by the anti-skid manufacturer, whichever is lower.
- Drive with caution to avoid road bumps, holes, sharp turns, or locked wheels which may affect the vehicle in an adverse manner.
- To prevent tire damage and excessive wear of the anti-skid chains, be sure to remove the e.g., anti-skid chains when driving on snow-free roads.

AutoSock

Vehicle does not come with AutoSock, but you can purchase them separately. Please pay attention to the following points when using AutoSock:

- Improper AutoSock can damage the tires, wheels, and brake system of the vehicle. Please carefully check the specifications of the original equipment (OE) tires and the relevant instructions provided by the AutoSock manufacturer. AutoSock can be used on all the four wheels of the vehicle.
- AutoSock is only used on ice and snow. When driving onto dry roads (asphalt roads, cement roads, dirt roads, etc.), remove it immediately. AutoSock should be removed when the vehicle is parked.
- When the vehicle starts, ice and snow particles on the ground may be thrown up due to the increased grip of AutoSock. Avoid standing at the rear of the vehicle.
- No need to turn off the vehicle's electronic stability system when AutoSock is in use.
- The speed of the vehicle must not exceed 50 km/h with AutoSock installed. Please also avoid sharp acceleration, braking, turning, and other aggressive operations, otherwise, there is a high risk of damage to AutoSock.
- If any abnormal noise is heard during driving with AutoSock installed, stop the vehicle in a safe position and, while ensuring personal safety, check whether AutoSock is installed correctly.
- When the black fabric in the bottom layer below the white road contact fabric is exposed, stop using AutoSock, and replace it with new ones.
- AutoSock should not be used as direct substitutes for winter tires.
- After use, dry AutoSock, place it in their original packaging, and store it in a dry place. Due to the ease of use of the material, AutoSock can be washed at room temperature to keep the road contact fabric clean but should not be ironed.

Winter Tires

The vehicle is configured with summer tires. In cold environments, tire performance is reduced, grip is reduced and susceptibility to impact damage is increased. High performance tires may temporarily stiffen in cold weather, and a rolling noise may be heard for the first few kilometers before the tires warm up. To have your vehicle perform optimally, using winter tires in winter is recommended. Please choose the applicable winter tires or stud tires according to the national laws in your country.

It is recommended to install winter tires for the vehicle when the ambient temperature is below about 7 °C. The driving performance of summer tires will be reduced at low temperatures, and the comfort will also be reduced. For example, there may be rattling noises caused by the tires when maneuvering on dry and slippery surfaces, or when accelerating out of corners.

Extremely cold temperatures below -15 °C may cause permanent damage to summer tires.

Use winter tires of the same brand and tread pattern on all wheels to ensure safe maneuvering characteristics.

Tire Size	Load Index
245/45R19	102
245/40R20	99

Caution

- Exceeding the maximum speed rating of the tire will damage the tire. This may also lead to tire blowouts. Never exceed the maximum speed rating of the tires.
- Winter tires with a tread depth of less than 4 mm must be replaced immediately. Such tires are no longer suitable for winter use and can no longer provide adequate grip. As a result, you may lose control of your vehicle and cause an accident.

Tire Repair

Warning

- Do not drive with a punctured tire, as it may lead to a tire blowout and endanger your safety.
- Tire sealant can irritate the eyes and skin. Keep out of reach of children. When using tire sealant, ignition, open flames, and smoking are prohibited.
- If the tire sealant gets on the skin or in the eyes, rinse the affected part of the body off i immediately and thoroughly with plenty of water. Change soiled clothing immediately. Get medical attention immediately in the event of an allergic reaction. If sealant was swallowed, thoroughly rinse out the mouth without delay and drink plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting.

Caution

- Before using tire sealant, please check the expiry date marked on the tire sealant tank to ensure that it is used before its expiry date.
- When the puncture width of a 19-inch tire is less than 6 mm, it is recommended to take out the puncturing object and repair the tire. If the puncture width is greater than 6 mm or the tire is even more seriously damaged, please do not continue to drive, and contact the NIO Service Center in a timely manner to replace the tire.
- If the tire is repaired while the puncturing object is not taken out, the tire can make abnormal noises while driving after the repair, and air leakage may occur during long-distance driving.
- If self-repairing tires or silent cotton tires are used, it is not recommended to repair tires with tire sealant. Please contact the NIO Service Center.

Caution

- If the tires used on the vehicle are self-repairing tires, the vehicle can still continue to run within a certain speed range (below 120 km/h) when the puncture width is less than 5 mm and the center display shows that the tire pressure is normal. However, self-repairing tires cannot be used as permanent tire repair measures. If any tire is found to have a nail in it or is seriously damaged, please contact the NIO Service Center in a timely manner for tire inspection or replacement.
- When repairing, please try to orient the tire so that the punctured spot is at the top of the tire.
- Tire sealant can only be used to repair the tread area.

Park the vehicle on a flat and solid road and put it in Park, stay away from busy and congested roads, then put on your reflective vest and place the warning triangle, turn on the hazard warning lights, and use the tire sealant and air pump in the vehicle tools to repair the tire:

1. Park the vehicle on a safe road, and place the warning triangle.
2. Open the vehicle tool cover in the rear trunk, and take out the tire sealant tank and air pump.
3. Stick the speed limit sign on the tire sealant canister onto the steering wheel to remind yourself not to exceed 80 km/h when driving.
4. Connect the tire sealant canister to the wheel, remove the tire valve dust cap, and connect the fill tube on the tire sealant canister to the tire valve.
5. Take out the power plug of the air pump and connect it to the 12 V power supply of the vehicle.
6. Make sure the vehicle is powered on, turn on the tire inflator and start to inject tire sealant into the tire. Observe the pressure gauge, and turn it off when the pointer reaches ≥2.2 bar (which will take around five to 10 minutes). Turn off the tire inflator and disconnect the power plug from the 12V power socket.

   Note

When the tire inflater begins operating, the pressure gauge will initially display a high pressure up to six bar, after which the pressure will drop to a normal range.

7. Disconnect the inflation tube from the tire valve, and put everything away.
8. Drive for 3-10 kilometers (about 5-10 minutes) at a speed not higher than 80 km/h, so that the tire sealant can be evenly spread inside the tire and block the puncture hole.
9. Park the vehicle on a safe road, set up the warning triangle, and check the tire pressure readings on the center display. Continue driving if the tire pressure is ≥2.2 bar. Inflate the tire to ≥2.2 bar if the tire is under-inflated and drive the vehicle at a speed no higher than 80 km/h for 3 to 10 km (or around 5 to ten minutes). Check the tire pressure again. If the tire pressure is still below 2.2 bar which means the tire is severely damaged or the tire sealant cannot seal the tire, park the vehicle in a safe place and contact NIO immediately.

Caution

- If the tire pressure cannot reach the designated range within 12 minutes during the tire repair process, this indicates severe damage. Please park your vehicle safely and call for assistance.
- Repairing with tire sealant is only for temporary emergency processing. After repairing the tire, you can continue driving for up to 200 kilometers or 3 days. Please go to the nearest workshop as soon as possible to have the tire repaired and the tire sealant wiped dry.
- After repairing the tire by using tire sealant, please contact the NIO Service Center for replacement of the inflation pump hose assembly.

Tire Replacement

When the vehicle is subject to a severe air leakage that it cannot be driven anymore, park the vehicle on a flat and solid road and put it in Park, stay away from busy and congested roads, then put on your reflective vest and place the warning triangle, turn on the hazard warning lights, then contact NIO Service Center for a tire replacement.

Warning

- When replacing a tire, the new tire must comply with the specifications of the original one. Using a tire with different specifications may affect the vehicle's handling and result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Never get underneath the vehicle when it is lifted on a jack as this may cause severe injury or even death.
- Do not lift the vehicle when people are inside.
- The vehicle can only be lifted at specified lift points on the vehicle's underside.
- Do not place any object above or underneath the jack when it is lifting the vehicle.
- Never use a jack to lift the vehicle on an uphill or downhill slope or on a roadway that slopes to one side.
- Jacks should only be used to raise vehicles when changing tires.

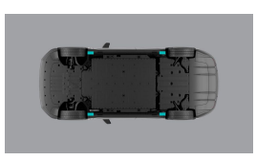
How to replace the tire:

1. Have a jack and a spare tire of the right specification ready for the tire replacement.
2. Place a block in front of the tire diagonally to the flat tire to prevent the vehicle from sliding.
3. Use the bolt cover remover in the emergency kit to remove the bolt covers, and loosen the bolts counterclockwise with the wheel wrench.

   Caution

   There is a special protective coating on the exterior of the rim. During the disassembly and assembly of bolts, tires or rims, the operating area of the rim shall be properly protected to prevent the surface of the rim from being accidentally scratched by hard objects.

4. Place the jack below the correct jacking spot on the vehicle.

   Warning

   Make sure the jack is positioned correctly under the jack point. Failure to do so may damage the vehicle, or the vehicle may slip off the jack and cause injury.

5. Jack the vehicle up to a tire changing height. As the jack touches the vehicle and jacks it up, double check to make sure that the jack is in the correct position.

6. Remove the wheel bolts and replace the tire. When installing the wheel, make sure the bolts are aligned with the mounting holes, and that the metal side of the wheel is in proper contact with the mounting surface.
7. After installing the wheel bolts, lower the vehicle completely to the ground (using the jack), then use a wrench to tighten all the bolts clockwise, and then use a torque wrench to tighten the vehicle bolts to the specified torque value.

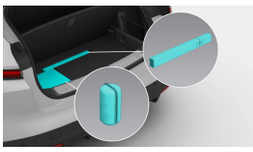
8. Check the tire pressure after the tire is replaced, inflate to the specified tire pressure if necessary, then install the tire valve cap.
9. Put the tools, jack, and the flat tires away in a secure manner.

Set Up Warning Signs

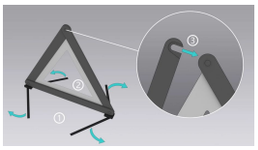
In the event of an emergency, drive the vehicle to a safe area while ensuring safety, then step on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle; put the vehicle in Park, and turn on the hazard warning lights on the center console to alert other drivers and passersby.

1. Park gear switch
2. Hazard warning lights

Open the cover at the bottom of the rear trunk's storage space, and inside you will see the emergency kit, take out the warning triangle and reflective vest, put on the reflective vest and place the warning triangle within 50 meters to 100 meters behind the vehicle (when it's on an expressway, place it 150 meters behind the vehicle; when it's at night, place it 100 meters further than the normal distance; in the event of rain and fog, place it 200 meters behind the vehicle).



How to assemble the warning triangle:



1. Unfold the bracket under the triangle.
2. Unfold the sides of the triangle.
3. Fasten the snap button on the top of the triangle.

Call for Road Assistance

In case of accidents such as a vehicle collision, water soaking, battery pack fire, etc., after setting up the warning signs, please leave the vehicle as soon as possible while ensuring the safety of the surrounding environment and maintain a safe distance (over 15 meters), then call the NIO Hotline for road assistance, and the Road Assistance team will come to help you as soon as possible.

Warning

In the event of a battery fire risk, the vehicle will automatically cut off power and the instrument cluster and center display will display a warning message. Make sure the surrounding area is safe and promptly leave the vehicle to call for help.

- If the vehicle is connected to the network, you can press the SOS button on the roof to call for road assistance (press+hold once, or press twice), and you can cancel the call on the center display within 8 seconds after making the call. The backlight of the SOS button indicates the status of the SOS feature: a steady green light means that the SOS feature is available; a flashing green light means that road assistance is being called; a steady red light or a flashing red light means that the SOS feature is unavailable, in such a situation you need to contact NIO Service Center immediately.

Note

When your vehicle is connected to the network, if an accident occurs and the airbag is deployed or the seat belt pretensioner is triggered, your vehicle will call for rescue automatically to protect your life.

The 112-based E-Call In-vehicle System

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is mandatory for new vehicle models in all EU countries. In the event of a severe accident, the eCall system can connect you to an appropriate PSAP (Public Safety Answering Point) via an audio link automatically if the vehicle safety system is triggered, or manually if you press the SOS button on the roof console.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically when the activation level for seat belt tensioners or airbags is reached in the event of a severe accident. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be activated manually, if needed. To activate the eCall manually, press the SOS button on the roof console for over 500 milliseconds and release the button within 10 seconds. The manual trigger is designed in such a way as to avoid mis-operation. To terminate the calling, press and release the SOS button again within five seconds after it is pressed the first time.

In the event of a critical system malfunction, the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may be impaired. The backlight of the SOS button indicates the status of the emergency call. Solid green indicates the eCall system functions normally; flashing green indicates an emergency call is in progress; flashing red indicates the eCall system has a minor fault but can still be activated; solid red indicates the eCall system has a major fault and cannot be activated. In this case, you can find the fault notification on the center display, and contact NIO if needed.

The processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is in line with the personal data protection rules stipulated in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, is based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3). The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency call made to the single European emergency number 112 in emergency situations within the meaning of Article 5(2) of Regulation (EU) 2015/758.

The 112-based E-Call in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle)
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen)
- Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel. The recent vehicle locations are selected by random so as to ensure that the IVS is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking.
- Estimated number of occupants onboard
- Log file of E-Call activation of the system and its timestamp

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points of the area where the vehicle is located. The data may be shared with other parties such as police stations, fire stations, hospitals limited for emergency aid purposes.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that:

- Data stored in the system is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- The system is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
- Data stored in the system is automatically and continuously removed.
- The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as to keep the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- The log of activity data in the system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency call and in any case no longer than 13 hours after an emergency call is triggered.

With regard to the arrangements for exercising data subjects' rights as well as the contact service responsible for handling access requests, please kindly contact NIO for support. For contact details, please refer to our Connected Vehicle Privacy Notice or contact details in this manual. NIO GmbH

Data Protection

Montgelasstrasse 14

81679 Munich

Germany

privacy.eu@nio.io

00 8000 999 6699 (EU) / 800 24 789 (Norway)

TPS eCall

TPS ecall is a third party supported eCall service regard to 112-based eCall in EU. ARC Europe SA will be acting as the TPS agency for NIO TPS eCall, operating the NIO TPS eCall with 24-hours, 7-days availability.

TPS eCall agent will deliver users with services in the corresponding language according to the language set in the user's vehicle. TPS eCall agent evaluates if it is a fake or real emergency before addressing the relevant PSAPs, then cancel the mis-call to help avoid legal risk of mis-connecting to PSAP. When the incidents occur, the TPS agent can help the user redirect RSA (Road Side Assist service) or advise the user to contact insurance companies providing RSA; if the incident is evaluated to be a crash or an emergency, TPS agent transfers the MSD to the local Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) and track the rescue progress in time. During the rescue process, TPS agents can act as a language translation function between the user and the local rescue staff to avoid language barriers in emergency situations.

TPS eCall can be set by main user on Setting - General section in the setting interface of the ICS of the vehicle replacing the statutory eCall. The default option will be TPS eCall. Once the customer makes a choice, the choice will be recorded within the user profile.

NIO TPS eCall can only be ended by the TPS agent. Please inform the agent if the call is connected by mistake and the agent will end the call for you.

The necessary vehicle data will be collected from the vehicle and sent to NIO TPS, then forwarded to the TPS provider to handle the emergency when TPS eCall is triggered by user's active triggering, collision triggering and EDA triggering.

Uploaded TPS eCall data will be stored for 6 months to allow NIO to perform accident responding and handling.

After contacting the driver and passengers, TPS provider will pass the necessary data to the local PSAP in local language for rescue purposes.

The TPS provider may collect and process only the following data, then send it to the local PSAP when it is needed:

- Driving service information
  - Crash type (front, side, rear, etc.) and delta Velocity (Vx and Vy). *(Note: Delta Velocity is the collection of change of velocity every 10 ms at X-axis and Y-axis during 250 ms after crash incident.)*
  - Current vehicle location and direction
  - Vehicle speed
  - Vehicle propulsion storage type
  - Airbag triggered (How many airbags are triggered after crash)
  - Language set up on the center display
  - Number of passengers
- Contact information
  - User's name (Optional, if the user is registered)
  - User's email address (Optional, if the user is registered)
  - User's mobile number (Optional, if the user is registered)
- Vehicle basic information
  - Make/Model/Color/Model year
  - VIN number

Jump Start

Jump Start

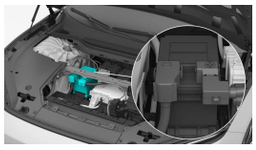
If the vehicle cannot be started normally due to a depleted 12V battery, you can start the vehicle by connecting it to the 12V battery of another vehicle through a jumper cable.

Caution

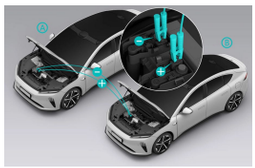
- When starting the vehicle with jumper cables, it is crucial to avoid contact between two vehicles. If the 12V battery-positive terminals of the two vehicles are connected, the current may run right away, causing damage to the vehicles.
- When connecting the jumper cables to the vehicles, be sure to connect the positive terminals first, followed by the negative terminals.
- When using jumper cables to initiate an external power source, voltage requirements apply. Please contact NIO Service Center when the battery is depleted to prevent damage to the battery.

How to jump start a vehicle:

1. Put the vehicle in Park, make sure that the 12V battery is powered off and connected to the electrical system of the vehicle correctly, open the hood, and locate the 12V battery of the depleted vehicle A.



2. Connect one end of the red cable to the positive (+) terminal of the 12V battery of the depleted vehicle A.



3. Connect the other end of the red cable to the positive (+) terminal of the 12V battery of the supplying vehicle B.
4. Connect one end of the black cable to the negative (-) terminal of the 12V battery of the supplying vehicle B.
5. Connect the other end of the black cable to the good ground point on the 12V battery of the depleted vehicle A.
6. Start the supplying vehicle, wait a few minutes and then start the depleted vehicle. See if the depleted vehicle A can be started normally.
7. Disconnect jumper cables in the reverse order of how they were connected, and put them away.

Emergency Unlocking from the Outside

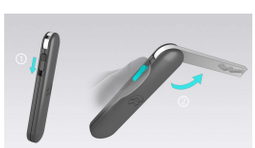
When the vehicle cannot be unlocked by conventional methods (such as a smart key fob, keyless entry, NIO app, or NFC), you can use the emergency key to unlock the driver's door.

Caution

Do not leave the emergency key in your vehicle. Please keep it safe in case of emergency.

To use the emergency key:

1. Pull out the metal key portion of the emergency key while toggling the switch on the emergency key.



2. Push the front end of the exterior handle on the driver's door.

3. Pull the door handle, and insert the emergency key into the lock. Rotate the key counterclockwise to unlock the driver's door.

4. To lock the driver's door, rotate the key counterclockwise first for unlocking, and then turn it clockwise.

Caution

To lock the vehicle with the key fob after it has been unlocked with the emergency key, reset the lock cylinder by unlocking and then locking the driver's door to keep the vehicle safe.

Open the Door from the Inside in an Emergency

When the whole vehicle is locked, if you need to open the door in an emergency (such as when the door handle electronic switch fails, or the vehicle is soaked in water), pull the mechanical switch of the inner door handle once to open the corresponding side door.

Caution

- When the 12V battery of the vehicle is low on power, the physical emergency key can only be used to unlock the door on the driver side. At such moments it cannot be used to unlock the whole vehicle. The other doors can only be unlocked and opened by pulling the mechanical switch for the inner door handle.
- The windows cannot be lowered when the door is opened using the mechanical switch for the inner door handle because doing so would risk damaging the window trim panel.
- Neither rear door can be opened from inside when the child safety lock function is enabled. They can only be opened from outside once the whole vehicle is unlocked.
- In the event of an accident that is of sufficient gravity to trigger airbag deployment, the child safety lock on the rear door will unlock automatically.

Emergency Opening of Liftgate

Open the square block above the latch from the inside of the rear trunk, and then press+hold the white button to open the liftgate.

Emergency evacuation

When there is a danger or emergency situation around your vehicle, please evacuate your vehicle as soon as possible and call for rescue while ensuring your personal safety.

Collision accidents

If your vehicle experiences a serious collision accident but you are able to leave your vehicle on your own, please leave your vehicle as soon as possible and evacuate to a safe area to avoid sustaining a secondary injury.

Vehicle on fire or abnormal vehicle temperature

If your vehicle experiences emergency situations such as smoke or fire, please leave your vehicle quickly and evacuate to a safe area to ensure your personal safety.

If the center display of your vehicle displays an abnormal vehicle or battery pack function warning, please park your vehicle while ensuring that you are driving safely, quickly leave your vehicle, and evacuate to a safe area to ensure your personal safety.

Vehicle trapped in water

If your vehicle is in a heavily waterlogged area such as a culvert or low-lying road while driving, please quickly evacuate your vehicle and move to a safe area to ensure your personal safety.

Severe vehicle malfunction

If your vehicle experiences a serious malfunction during driving or the center display prompts a serious vehicle malfunction, please park your vehicle while ensuring that you are driving safely, quickly leave your vehicle, and call for rescue.

Miscellaneous

Other scenarios where you need to evacuate your vehicle as soon as possible.

First Aid Kit

If your vehicle is equipped with a first aid kit, the first aid kit will be located in the side net pocket of the rear trunk. The first aid kit contains rescue items required for emergencies. See the instructions in the first aid kit for specific directions.

The first aid kit **is valid for 5 years** . After expiration, please contact NIO to purchase.

Protective Equipment for Rescue Operations

The vehicle E-powertrain system is driven by the high-voltage battery. In the event of a serious collision, leakage of high-voltage electricity or battery fluid may occur; therefore, the rescue operation on the vehicle should be undertaken by professional rescuers who wear corresponding protective equipment to secure personal safety.

Warning

Remove all metal objects (such necklaces and watches) before carrying out any operation. Failure to do so may increase the risk of electric shock.

Electrical Protection

Please wear the following protective equipment to avoid injury from high-voltage electric shock:

- Insulated rubber gloves (be able to insulate against voltage above 500V)
- Goggles
- Insulated rubber boots
- Tools with insulated protective covers

Chemical Protection

In the event of a battery leakage or potential risk of battery leakage, please wear the following protective equipment to prevent injury to your skin and face:

- Protective face shield
- Solvent resistant gloves

Cut off the High-voltage Circuit

To cut off the high-voltage circuit, first disconnect the emergency HV cut-off plug (located in the left area of the front trunk), and then disconnect the 12V battery negative terminal (located in the front trunk near the front windshield).

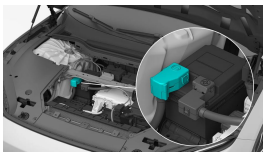
How to cut off the high-voltage circuit:

1. Pull the hood handle cover plate in the passenger compartment twice to release the hood.

2. Lift the hood.

3. Disconnect the emergency high-voltage cut-off plug, then cut off the high-voltage supply circuit, remove the plug and keep it in a safe place.

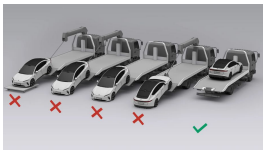
4. Disconnect the cable from the 12V battery negative terminal, and wrap it with a protective layer after disconnection to prevent conduction due to accidental contact from occurring.



Towing a Vehicle that Had an Accident

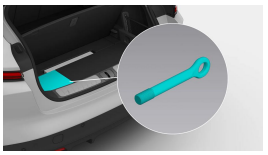
Caution

- This vehicle is not suitable for traction with wheels on the ground. Do not use a traction chain to tow the vehicle directly.
- When the vehicle is on snow, mud, or sand, or when the wheels are locked and unable to rotate freely, do not use a towing hook to tow the vehicle. Please contact the NIO service center.

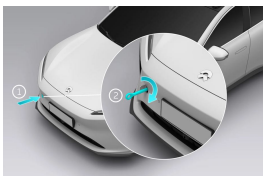


If you need the vehicle to be towed, please call a flatbed trailer to transport the vehicle. How to tow a vehicle:

1. Take out the tow hitch from the emergency kit in the rear trunk.



2. Press the lower end of the front towing flap of the vehicle to open it (1 in the picture), insert the tow hitch into the hole and rotate until the tow hitch is firmly seated (2 in the picture). The rear tow hitch (if present) is installed in the same way as the front tow hitch.



3. Press the brake pedal while the vehicle is in the Park gear, go to the Settings interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display, tap **Driving and Parking > Neutral Mode**, then the vehicle will be released from the parking brake and can be towed.
4. Power the vehicle off before towing, turn on the hazard warning lights, and make sure that there is no one in the vehicle and lock the entire vehicle.
5. Install the tow chain on the tow hitch and slowly tow the vehicle onto the flatbed.
6. After the vehicle is towed to the designated location on the flatbed, use brake stops and wheel straps to fix the tires.
7. Before having the vehicle transported on a flatbed, exit the Neutral Mode on the center display to prevent the vehicle from being damaged due to bumps during transportation.

Caution

- Only when there is no safety risk to the vehicle can it be towed away from the site. If the vehicle battery pack is deformed, leaking liquid, or emitting smoke, safety risks shall be eliminated first.
- If you are unable to enter the Neutral Mode normally, you can try restarting the 12V battery. If the parking brake cannot be released, the vehicle can be transported in as short a distance as possible by using tire slides or wheeled trailers.
- Do not depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal hard while exiting the Neutral Mode on the center display.
- When the parking brake is released and the vehicle can be towed, there is a risk that the vehicle may slide down on a slope. If necessary, please use brake wedges in conjunction.

Rescuing the Vehicle in Water

Caution

It is recommended not to stay in deep water (preferably not exceeding the battery base plate) for a long time when the vehicle is wading. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the high-voltage components of the vehicle.

On the premise that the vehicle body and chassis are not damaged, there will be no greater risk of electric shock caused by its short-time immersion in water. However, when dealing with the submerged vehicle, the professional rescuers shall wear appropriate rescue protective equipment. Under the condition of ensuring insulation protection, pull the vehicle out of the water, open the door, power off the vehicle, and then clean the water stains inside the vehicle. After checking for electricity leakage, cut off the high-voltage circuit normally.

Warning

When dealing with flooded vehicles, if rescue personnel do not wear appropriate protective rescue equipment, serious injury or even death can occur as a result.

Rescuing the Vehicle on Fire

Warning

- In the case of a vehicle fire, do not directly touch any part of the vehicle. All rescue operations should be performed by professionals who must wear appropriate personal protective equipment.
- The gas stored in the side curtain airbag cylinder and the high pressure air suspension tank may expand and explode under high temperatures. Please act with caution to avoid injury.

If the vehicle fire doesn't involve the high voltage battery, you can use the fire extinguisher to put out the fire.

If the vehicle fire is caused by the high voltage battery or the high voltage battery is overheated, deformed, cracked, or damaged in the fire, use a large amount of water or foam extinguishing agent mixed with water (F-500 EA is recommended) to cool down the high voltage battery. After the battery is completely cooled down (which may take up to 24 hours), monitor it for one more hour to ensure the battery does not heat up again. Then, drive the vehicle to an open and flat area and set up a 15-meter safety zone to keep people away from the vehicle.

Warning

Be aware that a high voltage battery may re-ignite even after it is cooled down. Particular attention should be paid when transporting the battery.

Rescuing the Vehicle with Battery Leakage

Warning

If leakage from a high voltage battery is caused due to an impact, the rescue should be performed by professionals who must wear protective face shields and chemical-resistant gloves. Never make direct contact with the fluids.

When the high-voltage battery leaks, it may generate heat or even cause a fire. Please cool down the high-voltage battery first and then clean up the fluids:

- If the leak is not severe, use a liquid absorbing pad to clean up the fluids and then place the used pad in a closed container or use incineration to dispose of the pad.
- If the leak is severe, dispose of the fluids following the disposal guidelines for hazardous chemical waste. Pour calcium gluconate solution over the leaked fluids.

Caution

If any fluids accidentally get on the skin, remove the contaminated clothes, and rinse the skin with soap under running water for 15 minutes until all chemical residues are removed. Seek medical attention immediately if the irritation or discomfort doesn't improve.

Vehicle Cutting Area

Warning

When professional rescuers perform cutting operations, they must use appropriate tools such as a hydraulic cutter and wear appropriate personal protective equipment to avoid serious injury.

When cutting is necessary during rescue, appropriate tools shall be used. The high-voltage and high-pressure areas of the vehicle must not be cut, such as airbag-related components and high-voltage components, as shown by the key areas in the figure below.